

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 810SH/811SH.

- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- This manual was created exclusively for SoftBank 810SH and 811SH handsets sold in Japan.
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 810SH and 811SH are compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

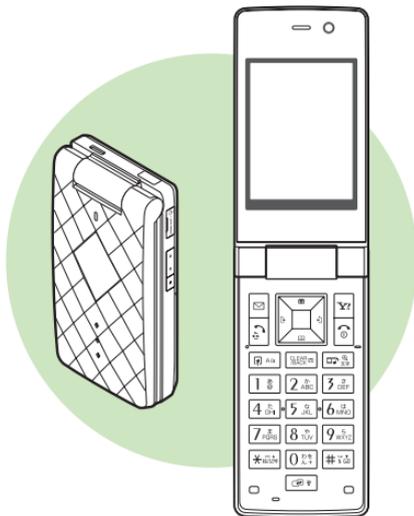
Note

- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorisation is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (see **P.19-28**) about unclear or missing information.

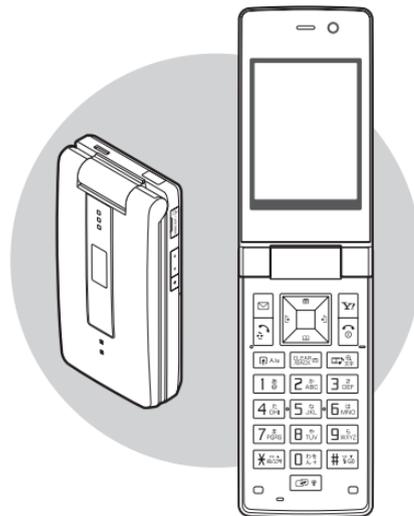
Symbols & Illustrations

This manual is for SoftBank 810SH and 811SH. Despite the differences in appearance, operations/functions are basically the same. In this manual, most operations are described with handset open (see **P.1-11**) in Standby. Sample screen shots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

810SH



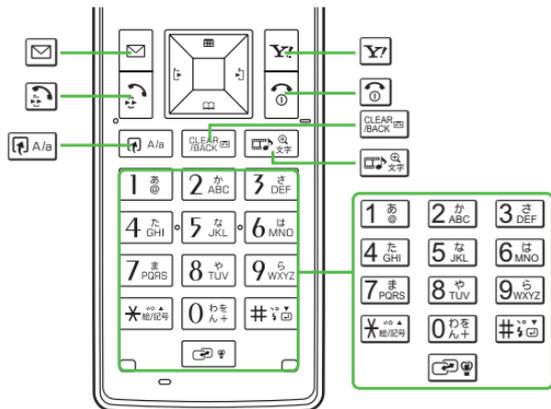
811SH



Tip ▶ Unless otherwise noted, illustrations in this manual are based on SoftBank 810SH.

Keypad Keys

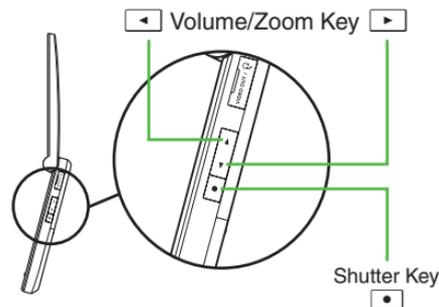
In this manual, Keypad keys are indicated as shown below.



Side Keys

Use Side Keys to control compatible functions such as mobile camera and volume control.

In this manual, Side Keys are indicated as shown below.

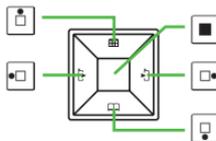


Multi Selector

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor and scroll, etc. In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.

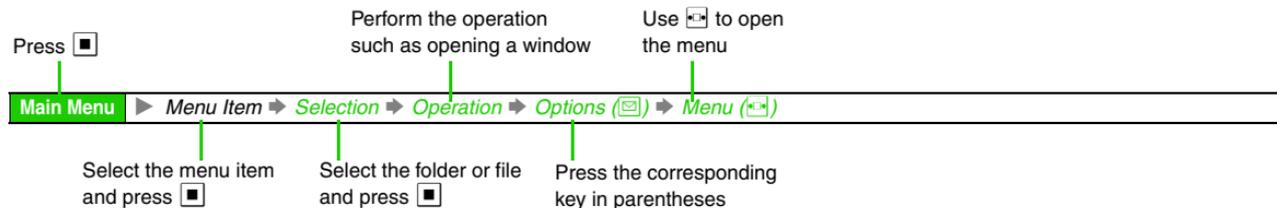
• Basic Multi Selector Operations

- : Press or
- : Press or
- : Press , , or



Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Main Menu are abbreviated as follows:

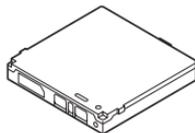


In this manual, descriptions are based on Standard Font Size (see **P.9-4**) set by default. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance when different size is set or while Simple Menu (see **P.2-21**) is active.

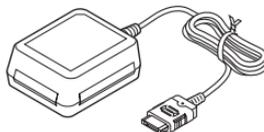
In this **SoftBank 810SH/811SH Instruction Manual**, **SoftBank 810SH/811SH** is abbreviated as **handset**.

Accessories

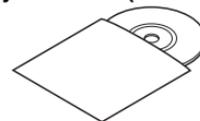
■ Lithium-ion Battery (Type 1) (SHBAR1)



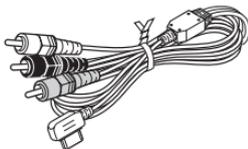
■ AC Charger (SHCAA1)



■ Utility Software (CD-ROM)★



■ Video Cable (SHPU01)



■ microSD™ Memory Card (64MB)★



■ SD™ Memory Card Adapter★



■ miniSD™ Memory Card Adapter★



*Utility Software updates/upgrades may become available on the SoftBank Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) without prior notification. Please check for the newest version of Utility Software and download as required.

★Complimentary sample not available for purchase

Note ▶ Supplied Utility Software is designed exclusively for 810SH and 811SH.

Tip ▶

- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).
- In this manual, microSD™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card".

Contents

Symbols & Illustrations	i
Accessories	iv
Contents	v
Safety Precautions	xviii
General Notes	xxix
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)	xxxvii

1 Getting Started

Function & Feature Preview	1-2
USIM Card	1-4
■ General Information & Precautions	1-4
■ Inserting & Removing USIM Card	1-5
■ USIM PINs	1-6
Handset Parts & Functions	1-7
■ Handset	1-7
■ Display Indicators	1-9
■ Handset Positions	1-11
Battery & Charger	1-12
■ Getting Started	1-12
■ Installing & Removing Battery	1-16
■ AC Charger	1-17
■ Desktop Holder	1-18
■ In-Car Charger	1-19
Handset Power On/Off	1-20
■ My Details	1-21
■ Keypad Lock	1-21

Handset Menus	1-22
■ Main Menu	1-22
■ User Shortcuts	1-23
● Assign	1-23
● Move	1-23
● Set to Default	1-23
■ Multi Job	1-25
■ Pen Light	1-25
Security Codes	1-26
■ Handset Code	1-26
■ Centre Access Code	1-26
■ Network Password	1-26

2 Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call	2-2
■ Emergency Calls	2-3
■ Redial	2-4
■ Placing an International Call	2-5
Incoming Call	2-6
■ Calling from Received Calls	2-8
Answer Phone	2-9
■ Activating & Cancelling	2-9
■ Playing Messages	2-10
Engaged Call Operations	2-11
■ Earpiece Volume	2-11
■ Voice Output	2-11
● Loudspeaker	2-11
● Mute	2-11
● Hold	2-11

■ Voice Memo.....	2-12
● Play.....	2-12
■ Other Engaged Call Operations	2-12
Call Log.....	2-13
● Delete	2-13
● Delete All	2-13
■ Using Call Log.....	2-13
● Call	2-13
● Create Message	2-13
Call Timers/Data Counter	2-14
■ Call Timers	2-14
● Clear Timers	2-14
■ Data Counter.....	2-14
● Clear Counter	2-14
Call Costs	2-15
● Clear Costs	2-15
● Cost Units	2-15
■ Limit Call Costs	2-15
● Max Cost	2-15
Outside Japan (International Roaming).....	2-16
■ Switching Network Services.....	2-16
■ Calling from Outside Japan.....	2-17
Manner Mode.....	2-18
■ Minding Mobile Manners	2-18
■ Activating & Cancelling.....	2-19
■ Activating/Cancelling Offline Mode.....	2-20
Simple Menu	2-21
■ Activating/Cancelling Simple Menu	2-21
■ Simple Menu Operations.....	2-22

3 Text Entry

Character Selection	3-2
■ Entry Modes.....	3-2
■ Key Assignments.....	3-3

Entering Characters.....	3-5
■ Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana	3-5
■ Entering Alphanumerics	3-7
■ Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons	3-7
■ Mail & Web Extensions	3-8
■ Character Code.....	3-8
■ Pager Code	3-8
Conversion Methods (Japanese Only).....	3-10
■ Phonetic Conversion	3-10
■ One-Hiragana Conversion.....	3-10
■ Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion.....	3-10
■ Quick Conversion (for Hiragana).....	3-11
■ Conversion Settings	3-12
● Optional Predictive Functions	3-12
● Set Low Priority	3-12
● Reset Learning	3-12
Editing Characters	3-12
■ Deleting & Replacing.....	3-12
■ Copy/Cut & Paste	3-12
■ Deleting Text On and After Cursor	3-13
Additional Functions	3-13
■ Copying from Phone Book	3-13
■ Using Text Templates	3-14
■ Changing Font Size.....	3-14

4 Phone Book

Overview	4-2
Saving to Phone Book.....	4-3
■ Phone Book Entry Items	4-3
■ Creating Phone Book Entries.....	4-4
■ Saving from Call Log.....	4-8
■ Phone Book Memory Status	4-8
Using Phone Book.....	4-8
■ Dialling from Phone Book.....	4-8

Editing Phone Book Entries	4-10
■ Correction/Change	4-10
■ Copying Phone Book Entries	4-10
■ Deleting Phone Book Entries	4-11
Category Settings	4-11
■ Changing Category Name.....	4-11
■ Customising Handset Responses	4-12
Contact Groups	4-12
■ Creating Contact Groups.....	4-12
■ Saving Group Members	4-12
■ Editing Contact Groups	4-12
■ Editing Group Members	4-13
Speed Dial List	4-13
■ Saving Phone Numbers	4-13
■ Speed Dial.....	4-14
● Delete	4-14
● Clear All	4-14
S! Address Book (SAB)	4-15
■ SAB Sync Commands & Features	4-15
■ Service Usage Outline	4-16
■ Saving User ID & Password	4-17
■ Backup & Restore	4-17
■ Synchronising Phone Book	4-18
● Set Frequency	4-18
● Set Sync Mode	4-18
■ Opening Log.....	4-19
My Details	4-19
■ Opening My Details	4-19
● Edit/Add Details	4-19
● Delete	4-19

5 Video Call

Getting Started	5-2
Initiating a Video Call	5-3
Answering a Video Call	5-3
Engaged Video Call Operations	5-4
● Camera Picture.....	5-4
● Earpiece Volume	5-4
● Mute.....	5-4
● Switch Images	5-5
● Video Output.....	5-5
● Loudspeaker	5-5
● Hold	5-5
● Open Phone Book	5-6
● Transfer Audio.....	5-6
● Mirror Image	5-6
● Exposure	5-6
● Help	5-6
Video Call Settings	5-6
● Camera Picture.....	5-6
● Loudspeaker	5-7
● Incoming Picture.....	5-7
● Outgoing Picture	5-7
● Backlight	5-7
● Mute Microphone.....	5-7
● Hold Guidance Pict.....	5-7
● Remote Monitor	5-8

6 Camera

Getting Started	6-2
■ Mobile Camera Basics	6-2
■ Camera Display Indicators	6-3
■ Key Assignments	6-4
Still Images	6-5
■ Photo Camera Mode	6-5
■ Capturing Still Images	6-6
■ Still Image Functions	6-7
Video	6-8
■ Video Camera Mode	6-8
■ Recording Video	6-8
■ Video Recording Operations	6-9
Opening Images & Playing Video	6-10
■ Opening Still Images	6-10
■ Playing Video	6-10
● SD Video	6-11
Special Shooting Modes	6-11
■ Self-timer	6-11
■ Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)	6-12
■ Adding Frames (Photo Camera)	6-13
■ Camera Effects (Photo Camera)	6-14
Sending Images	6-14
■ Still Images	6-14
■ Video Clips	6-15
Camera Settings	6-15
■ Shooting Options	6-15
● Show Indicators	6-15
● Shutter Sound	6-15
● Mobile Light	6-16
● Display Size	6-16

■ Image Settings	6-16
● Exposure	6-16
● Picture Size	6-16
● Picture/Video Quality	6-17
● Scene	6-17
● Microphone	6-17
● Record Time/Size	6-17
● Video Encode	6-18
■ Additional Settings	6-18
● Internal Camera/External Camera	6-18
● Save to	6-18
● Auto Save	6-18

7 Media Player

Media Player Basics	7-2
■ Downloading Music/Video	7-2
■ Saving Music Files from PCs	7-3
Recording Music	7-4
■ Connecting to Audio Sources	7-6
■ Recording	7-7
■ Recording Settings	7-8
● Monitor Level	7-8
● Synch Recording	7-8
● Bit Rate	7-8
● Auto Mark Level	7-8
Playing Music	7-9
■ Playback	7-10
■ Playback Settings	7-11
● Tone Control	7-11
● Playback Pattern	7-11

Playing Video	7-12	Managing Files & Folders	8-7
■ Playback.....	7-12	■ Adding Folders.....	8-7
■ Playback Settings.....	7-13	■ Changing File/Folder Name.....	8-8
● Playback Pattern.....	7-13	■ Deleting Files & Folders.....	8-8
● Backlight.....	7-14	■ Copying/Moving Files.....	8-9
● Display Size.....	7-14	Using Files	8-10
● Sound Settings.....	7-14	■ Wallpaper.....	8-10
● Web Link Settings.....	7-14	■ Saving to Phone Book.....	8-10
Editing Video	7-14	■ Ringvideo & Ringtone.....	8-10
■ Clipping Portions between Two Points.....	7-15	■ S! Mail Attachments.....	8-11
■ Cropping Video Clips.....	7-15	■ Printing Images.....	8-11
■ Adding Subtitles.....	7-15	Editing Still Images	8-12
● Duration.....	7-16	■ Changing Image Size.....	8-12
● Display Position.....	7-16	■ Visual Effects (Retouch).....	8-13
● Font Size.....	7-17	■ Adding Text & Stamps.....	8-13
● Scrolling.....	7-17	■ Face Arrange.....	8-14
● Background Colour.....	7-17	■ Additional Picture Effects.....	8-15
● Font Colour.....	7-17	● Frame.....	8-15
● Highlight.....	7-18	● Rotate.....	8-15
● Blink.....	7-18	● File Format/File Size.....	8-16
● Reset.....	7-18	■ Panorama Images.....	8-16
Managing Video & Music Files	7-18	■ Split Screen.....	8-17
■ Adding New Playlist.....	7-19	Memory Card	8-18
■ Adding Files to Playlists.....	7-19	■ Precautions.....	8-19
■ Deleting Files in SD VIDEO & SD AUDIO.....	7-20	■ Inserting & Removing Memory Card.....	8-19
		■ Memory Card Adapters.....	8-21
		■ Format Card.....	8-21
		■ Backup & Restore.....	8-22
		■ Additional Functions.....	8-24
		● Memory Status.....	8-24
		● SD Local Contents.....	8-24
8 Managing Files (Data Folder)			
Data Folder	8-2		
■ Window Description.....	8-2		
■ Major Icons.....	8-3		
■ Display Settings.....	8-3		
Opening Files	8-4		

■ Additional Sound Settings	9-15	■ Changing Handset Code	9-24
● Ringer Output	9-15	● Chng Handset Code	9-24
● Earpiece Volume	9-15	Reset	9-24
● Any Key Answer	9-15	● Reset Settings	9-24
Date & Time	9-16	● Reset All	9-25
● Set Date/Time	9-16	Call Settings	9-25
● Set Time Zone/Daylight Saving	9-16	■ International Call	9-25
● Date/Time Format	9-16	● Int'l Prefix	9-25
● Calendar Format	9-16	● Country Codes	9-25
User Dictionary	9-17	● Auto Add Code	9-26
■ Entries (Japanese Only)	9-17	■ Auto Answer	9-26
● New Entry	9-17	● Switch On/Off	9-26
● Edit/Delete	9-17	● Answer Time	9-27
■ 810SH/811SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)	9-17	■ Additional Settings	9-27
● Acquire Dictionary	9-17	● Minute Minder	9-27
● Cancel	9-17	● Display Call Cost	9-27
● Info	9-17	● Call Time Counter	9-27
Handset Security	9-18		
■ Face Recognition	9-18	10 Connectivity	
● Conductor Setting	9-20	Bluetooth	10-2
● Security Level	9-21	■ Getting Started	10-2
● Report	9-21	■ Transferring Files via Bluetooth®	10-4
■ PIN	9-21	■ Connecting Handsfree Devices	10-8
● PIN Entry	9-21	■ Bluetooth® Settings	10-9
● Change PIN	9-22	● Device Name	10-9
■ Handset Locks	9-22	● Bluetooth Timeout	10-9
● Handset Lock	9-22	● Handsfree Setting	10-9
● Function Lock	9-22	● My Device Details	10-9
● Phone Book Lock	9-23	Infrared	10-10
● Fixed Dialling No.	9-23	■ Getting Started	10-10
● Packet Lock	9-23	■ Transferring Files via Infrared	10-10
■ Opening Secret Entries	9-24	Mass Storage	10-14
● Show Secret Data	9-24		

Network Settings	10-15	Tasks	11-7
● Select Network	10-15	■ Saving Entries	11-7
● Set Preferred	10-15	● Assign Tone	11-8
● Add, Edit & Delete	10-15	● Duration	11-9
● Network Info.....	10-15	● Secret	11-9
● Retrieve NW Info.....	10-16	■ Opening Entries	11-9
Location Info	10-16	■ Searching Entries by Subject	11-10
● URL Setting	10-16	■ Editing Entries	11-10
● Datum On/Off	10-16	■ Deleting Entries.....	11-10
● Location Property	10-16	● This Task.....	11-10
		● All Tasks/All Comp. Tasks.....	11-10
		Alarm	11-11
11 Tools		■ Setting Alarm.....	11-11
Calendar	11-2	● Assign Tone	11-12
■ Opening Calendar	11-2	● Custom Screen.....	11-12
● Default View.....	11-2	● Snooze.....	11-13
● Set Colour.....	11-2	● Alarm Volume	11-13
● Set Holiday	11-2	● Vibration.....	11-13
● Quick Entry	11-3	● Duration	11-13
● Set Cal. Alarm	11-3	■ Cancelling & Reactivating Alarm.....	11-13
■ Saving Entries	11-3	● Switch Off	11-13
● Assign Tone	11-4	● Switch On	11-13
● Duration	11-5	■ Deleting Alarm.....	11-13
● Repeat	11-5	● Reset Alarm.....	11-13
● Secret	11-5	● Clear All	11-13
■ Opening Entries	11-5	World Clock	11-14
■ Searching Entries by Subject	11-6	■ Setting Time Zone & Daylight Saving.....	11-14
■ Editing Entries	11-6	■ Opening World Clock	11-14
■ Deleting Entries.....	11-6	Calculator	11-14
● This Appointment/All This Day.....	11-6	Voice Recorder	11-15
● All This Week/Up to Last Week	11-6	■ Preparation.....	11-15
● All This Month/Up to Last Month	11-7	■ Recording.....	11-16
● All This 2Months	11-7	■ Playback.....	11-16
● All This 6Months	11-7	■ Recording Setting.....	11-17
● All Appointments.....	11-7	● Save Recording To	11-17

Document Viewer	11-17	Voicemail	12-4
Barcode	11-18	● Voicemail	12-4
● Scanning during Text Entry.....	11-21	● Cancel All	12-4
● Open Barcode	11-21	● Call Voicemail	12-4
● Scanned Results	11-21	● Status	12-5
Create QR Codes	11-21	■ Missed Call Notification.....	12-5
● Phone Book	11-22	● Activate/Cancel.....	12-5
● Text Input	11-22	Call Waiting	12-5
● Data Folder	11-22	● Call Waiting On/Off.....	12-5
Text Scanner	11-22	● Incoming Calls	12-5
● Scanning during Text Entry.....	11-24	● Status	12-6
Stopwatch	11-24	Conference Call	12-6
Countdown Timer	11-24	● Dial New Number.....	12-6
Expenses Memo	11-25	● Swap Calls.....	12-6
● Add New Expense	11-25	● Conference Call	12-6
● Totals	11-25	Call Barring	12-7
● Edit Category.....	11-25	■ Restricting Outgoing Calls.....	12-8
Text Templates	11-26	● Set/Cancel Restriction	12-8
■ New Entry.....	11-26	● Status	12-8
■ Opening Templates	11-26	■ Restricting Incoming Calls.....	12-8
■ Editing Templates	11-26	● Set/Cancel Restriction	12-8
■ Deleting Templates.....	11-26	● Status	12-8
Phone Help	11-26	■ Rejecting a Call	12-9
12 Optional Services		● Set Reject Number	12-9
Optional Services Overview	12-2	● Switch On/Off	12-9
Call Forwarding	12-2	● Unknown	12-9
● Call Forwarding.....	12-2	● Withheld.....	12-9
● Cancel All	12-3	● Payphone.....	12-9
● Status	12-3	● Unavailable	12-9
		■ Changing Network Password	12-10
		● Change NW Password.....	12-10
		Caller ID	12-10
		● Show My Number	12-10
		● Status	12-10

13 Messaging

Basics	13-2
■ Messaging Folders	13-2
■ Window Description.....	13-3
■ Views.....	13-4
■ Customising Handset Address	13-5
Sending Text Messages	13-6
■ Basics	13-6
■ Creating & Sending SMS Mail.....	13-7
■ Creating & Sending S! Mail	13-7
■ Delivery Options	13-16
● Delivery Report.....	13-16
● Expiry Time.....	13-16
● Reply To Settings.....	13-16
● Priority	13-16
● Remote Fwd. Action	13-16
● Set Auto Delete.....	13-16
● Reply Request	13-16
● Forward NG	13-17
● Delete NG.....	13-17
● Quiz	13-17
● Set Auto Play File	13-17
■ Send Reservation.....	13-17
■ Using Drafts.....	13-18
Incoming Text Messages	13-19
■ Opening New Messages	13-19
● Idle Screen Info.....	13-21
● Light Colour	13-21
● Vibration Pattern	13-21
● Ringtone	13-21
■ Retrieving Complete S! Mail Messages	13-21
■ Retrieving Mail List	13-22
● Retrieve	13-22
● Remote Forward	13-23
● Delete	13-23
● Message Details	13-23
Using Messages	13-23
■ Checking Messages	13-23
● Display Effect	13-25
● Background Colour/Display Speed	13-25
■ Replying to Messages	13-26
■ Forwarding Messages	13-26
■ Cancelling Sent Messages.....	13-27
■ Linked Info	13-28
■ Protecting Messages	13-29
■ Deleting Messages.....	13-29
■ Saving Attachments to Data Folder.....	13-30
■ Using Attachments	13-31
■ My Folders.....	13-31
Additional Functions	13-34
■ Speed Mail List.....	13-34
■ Speed Mail	13-34
■ Auto Resend.....	13-35
■ General Settings.....	13-35
● Sending Progress	13-35
● Delivery Report.....	13-35
● Anti Spam Measures	13-35
● Signature Settings	13-36
● Auto Delete	13-36
● Message Notice	13-36
● Secret Folder	13-37
● Scroll Unit	13-37
■ SMS Settings.....	13-37
● Expiry Time.....	13-37
● Message Centre	13-37
● Char-code.....	13-37

■ SI Mail Settings	13-38	Live Monitor (Japanese Only)	14-14
● Message DL (Japan)	13-38	■ Live Monitor Basics	14-14
● Message DL (Abroad)	13-38	■ Opening Information	14-15
● Reply To Settings	13-38	■ Registering with Live Monitor Items	14-15
● Picture Appearance	13-38	■ Updating Live Monitor Items	14-16
● Auto Play File	13-38	■ Automatic Update	14-16
● Send File Settings	13-38	■ Deleting Live Monitor Items	14-17
14 Yahoo! Keitai		Using PC Site Browser	14-17
Getting Started	14-2	■ Opening Yahoo! JAPAN	14-17
Using Yahoo! Keitai	14-3	■ Entering URLs Directly	14-18
■ Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu	14-3	Additional Functions	14-19
■ Entering URLs Directly	14-4	■ Sub Menu Settings	14-19
Basic Operations	14-5	● Copy Text	14-19
● Back	14-5	● Reload	14-19
● Jump to Top/Bottom	14-5	● Enter URL	14-19
● Secure Area	14-5	● Search	14-19
● Authentication	14-5	● Send	14-19
● Help	14-5	● Details	14-19
Advanced Features	14-9	● History	14-19
■ Bookmarks & Saved Pages	14-9	● Char-code	14-19
● Edit	14-10	● Uploading Files	14-19
● Bookmarks Folder	14-10	■ Common Settings	14-20
● Rename	14-11	● Font Size	14-20
● Move	14-11	● Scroll Unit	14-20
● Delete	14-11	● Downloads	14-20
■ Saving Files to Data Folder	14-11	● Memory Operation	14-20
■ Using Linked Info	14-12	● Download to	14-20
Streaming	14-12	● Browser Initializes	14-20
● Streaming from Media Player	14-14	● Reset Settings	14-20
		■ PC Site Browser Settings	14-21
		● Warning Message	14-21
		● Zoom In/Out Settings	14-21

■ Security	14-21
● Manufacture Number	14-21
● Send Referer	14-21
● Cookies	14-21
● Script Settings	14-21
● Secure Prompt	14-21
● Root Certificates	14-22
● Authentic Info Keep	14-22
● Flash® Restriction	14-22

15 S! Applications

Getting Started	15-2
■ S! Appli Library	15-2
■ S! Applications on Memory Card	15-3
■ Video Output	15-3
■ Downloading S! Applications	15-4
Using S! Applications	15-5
■ Starting S! Applications	15-5
■ Exit, Pause & Resume	15-5
Managing S! Applications	15-6
■ Opening S! Application Properties	15-6
■ Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	15-6
■ Deleting S! Applications	15-6
■ Screensaver	15-7
■ Setting Permissions	15-8
■ S! Application Operational Settings	15-8
● Application Volume	15-8
● Backlight	15-8
● Blink	15-9
● Vibration	15-9
● Calls & Alarms	15-9
● Surround	15-9
■ Reset	15-9
● Set to Default	15-9
● Memory All Clear	15-10

16 S! FeliCa (Japanese Only)

Basics	16-2
■ Starting Lifestyle-Appli	16-3
Using S! FeliCa	16-3
S! FeliCa Settings	16-4
■ IC Card Status	16-4
■ IC Card Lock	16-4
■ Remote Lock	16-5
■ Interface Settings	16-7
■ Resetting Defaults	16-8

17 Entertainment

S! Cast (Japanese Only)	17-2
■ Basics	17-2
■ Service Registration & Content Subscription	17-2
■ Opening Received Information	17-2
■ Using Information	17-3
■ Using Weather Indicator	17-4
● Manual Update	17-4
Electronic Books	17-5
■ Reading Content	17-5
■ Using E-Book Images	17-8
● Embedded Information	17-8
■ Using a Dictionary	17-8
● Look Up Word	17-8
ComicSurfing® (Japanese Only)	17-8

18 Communication

S! Town (Japanese Only)	18-2
■ Using S! Town	18-2
■ S! Town Library.....	18-3
S! Loop (Japanese Only)	18-3
Near Chat (Japanese Only)	18-4
■ Basics.....	18-4
■ Using Near Chat.....	18-4
● Latest Information.....	18-5

19 Appendix

Function List	19-2
Troubleshooting	19-4
Software Update	19-8
Character Code List	19-10
Pictogram List	19-16
Specifications	19-17
Memory List	19-19
Index	19-20
Warranty & After-Sales Services	19-27
Customer Service	19-28

Safety Precautions

- Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

■ Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on.

Symbols and their meanings are described below:



DANGER

Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use



WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury from improper use



CAUTION

Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

■ Symbols



Prohibited Actions



Compulsory Actions



Attention Required

DANGER

Handset, Battery & Charger

Use specified battery, Charger and Desktop Holder only (see P.iv).



Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.



Keep metal objects away from Charger terminals. Keep handset away from necklaces, hairpins, etc.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury.
Use a case to carry battery.

Battery

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire. Do not:



- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Open/modify/disassemble battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or deformed battery
- Use non-specified charger (see P.iv)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge battery near fire or sources of heat; or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment

If battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.



Eyes may be severely damaged.

WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into the handset, Charger or Desktop Holder.

Do not insert metal or flammable objects into handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause fire or electric shock. Keep out of children's reach.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.

Fire or electric shock may result.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.

Keep the handset, Charger and Desktop Holder away from chemicals or liquids; fire or electric shock may result.

Keep battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder away from microwave ovens.

Battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may leak, burst, overheat or ignite, leading to accidents or injury.

Do not disassemble or modify handset or related hardware.

- Do not open handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; fire or electric shock may result.

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

CAUTION:

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

If water or foreign matter is inside handset:

Discontinue handset use to prevent fire/electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger, then contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.

WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Avoid sources of fire.

Prevent fire or explosion. Do not use handset in the presence of gas or fine particles (coal, dust, metal, etc.).



Do not subject handset to strong shocks or impacts.

Strong shocks or impacts to handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset be damaged, remove battery then contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use; fire or electric shock may occur.



If an abnormality occurs:

If a handset emits an unusual sound, smoke or odour, discontinue use; may cause fire or electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger; contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.



Handset

Keep Memory Card and Memory Card Adapters out of children's reach.

If swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.



Handset

Take measures to prevent accidents.

- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (effective 1 November 2004).
- Do not use Headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially at level/road crossings to avoid accidents.



Do not swing handset by strap.

May result in injury or breakage.



Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.



Adjust vibration and ringtone settings:

Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.



During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



WARNING

Charger

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.

- **AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input**
 - SoftBank is not liable for problems caused by charging battery abroad.
- **In-Car Charger: DC 12V-24V Input**



Do not use commercially available transformers.

Use of AC Charger with commercially available transformers may cause fire, electric shock or damage.



Do not use In-Car Charger if vehicle has a positive earth.

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a negative earth.



Charger care

- Do not touch blades with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.
- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet; may cause excess heat/fire.
- Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.



Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

May cause overheating, fire or electric shock. Keep metal away from terminals.



Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.



Take measures to prevent accidents.

Secure In-Car Charger to avoid injury or accidents.



Damaged AC Charger/In-Car Charger cord:

May cause fire or electric shock; discontinue use and purchase a new Charger.



During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.



Charger/Desktop Holder use and children:

May cause electric shock/injury; keep out of reach.



WARNING

Battery

- If battery does not charge properly, stop charging. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
- If there is leakage or abnormal odour, avoid fire sources. Battery may catch fire or burst.



If there is abnormal odour, excessive heat, discolouration or distortion, remove battery from handset.
It may leak, overheat or explode.



Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.



Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.

Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.



Observe these rules inside medical facilities:

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a mobile handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.



Consult manufacturer for radio wave effects on electronic medical equipment.



CAUTION

Handset, Battery & Charger

Handset care



- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from direct sunlight (inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discolouration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

Usage environment



- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, telephone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

Handset

Handset temperature



Handset may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.

Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).



Handset may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries.

Volume settings



Moderate handset volume; excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Inside vehicles



Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.

CAUTION

Handset

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

See handset materials below. Some materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



■ 810SH

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Main Display side)	Magnesium/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish)
Hinge cover, Keypad side edge ornament	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic UV curing painting, discontinuous deposition)
Housing (Keypad/battery/External Display side), battery cover, Antenna cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Display window, lens cover, External Display window	Acrylic resin
Portrait/Macro Selector	POM resin
Camera ring, housing stop pads	Urethane acrylate
Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, Multimedia/Text Key, Keypad, Multi Job/Manner Key	PC resin
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys), Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Side Keys	PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Multi Selector frame (Cursor Keys)	PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: aluminum deposition, acrylic painting)
Multi Selector (centre)	PC resin/ABS resin/Chrome plating (sealer: nickel, copper)
Hinge arms (left & right)	PPE resin/Urethane-acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Memory Card Slot cover, VIDEO OUT/Headphone/Optical Digital Line-In Port cover, External Device Port cover	ABS resin/Elastomeric resin/Acrylic UV curing painting
Battery	PC resin
Charger Terminal	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screw	SWCH16A/Trivalent chromate (white & green)
Screw cover	PC resin
USIM Tray	POM resin

⚠ CAUTION

■ 811SH

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Main Display side)	Magnesium/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish)
Hinge cover, Keypad side edge ornament	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic UV curing painting, discontinuous deposition)
Housing (Keypad/battery/External Display side), battery cover, Antenna cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Display window, lens cover, External Display window	Acrylic resin
Portrait/Macro Selector	POM resin
Camera ring, housing stop pads	Urethane acrylate
Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, Multimedia/Text Key, Keypad, Multi Job/Manner Key	PC resin
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys), Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Side Keys	PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Multi Selector frame (Cursor Keys)	PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: aluminum deposition, acrylic painting)
Multi Selector (centre)	PC resin/ABS resin/Chrome plating (sealer: nickel, copper)
Hinge arms (left & right)	PPE resin/Urethane-acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Memory Card Slot cover, VIDEO OUT/Headphone/Optical Digital Line-In Port cover, External Device Port cover	ABS resin/Elastomeric resin/Acrylic UV curing painting
Battery	PC resin
Charger Terminal	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screw	SWCH16A/Trivalent chromate (white & green)
Screw cover	PC resin
Faceplate (External Display side)	Nickel/Chrome plating
USIM Tray	POM resin

CAUTION

Charger

Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. May overheat and cause injury.



Do not touch Desktop Holder while in use.

May cause burn injuries.



Use only the specified fuse.

1 A fuse for In-Car Charger.
Or may cause breakage/fire.



Always charge battery in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger and Desktop Holder; may cause damage/fire.



Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

To avoid weakening the car battery, always start engine before charging the handset using In-Car Charger.



During periods of disuse

Always unplug AC Charger or In-Car Charger after use.



Handset maintenance

Always disconnect AC Charger or In-Car Charger when cleaning handset, to prevent shock/injury.



Installing In-Car Charger

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.



⚠ CAUTION

Battery

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.



Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside a closed vehicle; may reduce battery performance or overheat. An overheated battery may cause fire.



Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate.



If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately.



Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Keep battery out of children's reach.



- Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.
- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odour or excessive heat, stop using battery and call SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance.
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.



General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
Eavesdropping
Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off).
Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
 - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
 - (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
810SH	APYHRO00050	0.662 W/kg	0.845 W/kg
811SH	APYHRO00051	0.578 W/kg	0.675 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health. The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide*.

Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
810SH	0.701 W/kg	1.092 W/kg
811SH	0.762 W/kg	0.926 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

-
- * Please see General Notes (Electromagnetic Waves) on **P.xxix** for important notes regarding body-worn operation.
 - ** Values are measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 810SH and 811SH are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

**A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address:
<http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>**

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
 - Use handset within temperatures of 5°C to 35°C and humidity 35% to 85%. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
 - Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage colour filter and affect image colour.
 - Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
 - Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
 - Do not expose handset to rain, snow or high humidity.
 - Never disassemble or modify handset.
 - Avoid scratching handset Display.
 - When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging the Display.
 - When using Headphones, moderate volume to avoid sound bleed.
 - **Function Usage Limits**
These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:
Camera; Media Player; S! Applications.
- **Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.**
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (toilet, bathroom, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
 - **Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.**
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
 - Connect only the specified products to VIDEO OUT/ Headphone Port. Non-specified devices may malfunction or cause damage.
 - Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (see **P.10-16**) to restore usability.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No licence is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA. See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional licence and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional licence may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application.

Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 1997-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.





microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player (SMIL player) developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2004-2006 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

 is a trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

The frequency band used for the Bluetooth® function of handset is shared with other industrial, scientific or medical equipment (microwave ovens, etc.), and used at premises radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using the Bluetooth® function, visually check that there are no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move to other place or stop the Bluetooth® function (stop the transmission) immediately.
- 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.

From landlines, see **P.19-28** "Customer Service".

- This radio equipment operates in the 2.4 GHz band using the FHSS modulation, and its maximum communication distance is ten metres.

2.4FH1

Microsoft® Excel and Microsoft® Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the United States.
Microsoft and PowerPoint are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

This product employs Macromedia® Flash® Lite™ technology developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright© 1995-2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash and Macromedia Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.



QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation
©2002-2006 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

Document Viewer is enabled by Pictel Technologies.
Pictel, Pictel Powered, Pictel Viewer, Pictel File Viewer, Pictel Document Viewer, Pictel PDF Viewer and the Pictel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pictel Technologies Ltd.





Portions of this product are protected under copyright law and are provided under license by ARIS/SOLANA/4C.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

ComicSurfing is a trademark or registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc.

- SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.
- Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

Video Call, S! Application, Custom Screen, Sky Mail, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Near Chat, Multi Job, S! Mail, Station, Arrange Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Cast, S! Town, S! Loop, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, Live Monitor, S! Address Book and Lifestyle-Appli are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

CP8 PATENT

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

810SH and 811SH meet the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg^* .

This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value is 0.80 W/kg for 810SH, and 0.84 W/kg for 811SH. Tests for SAR are conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level, and follow the testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure.

The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the Websites on the right.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (Protection from Radio Wave Environment)

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)

<http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html> (Japanese only)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

Getting Started

Function & Feature Preview

Memory Card is required for items with grey background.

PC Site Browser

View websites designed for PCs on handset.

P.14-17

S! Town

Select an avatar to enter 3D virtual town via this online communication application.

P.18-2

S! Loop

S! Loop is a communication service.

P.18-3

E-Book/Document Viewer

Read E-Book, E-Book dictionaries or documents (PDF files, etc.) on handset.

P.17-5, P.11-17

USIM Card

For use only with USIM Card-compatible SoftBank handsets; contains vital user information.

P.1-4

International Roaming

Make/receive calls, exchange mail or access services even outside Japan.

P.2-16

Manner Mode

Press a single key to mute ringer and activate Answer Phone automatically.

P.2-18

Simple Menu

Select a simplified menu, ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.

P.2-21

Kanji Conversion

Entering Japanese text with Predictive or Previous Usage reduces required keystrokes.

P.3-6

Phone Book

Save up to 750 entries; add up to three phone numbers/three mail addresses to each.

P.4-2

S! Address Book (SAB)

Backup Phone Book via Server; synchronise Phone Book/SAB to reflect changes.

P.4-15

Video Call

Place or receive video calls: send live video or previously saved still image during calls.

P.5-2

Camera

Capture still/video images shot with the 2 megapixel handset camera; send images via S! Mail.

P.6-2

Media Player

Play downloaded music and video images as well as those recorded/captured on handset.

P.7-2

Data Folder

Access handset image and sound files from here; files are organised by file type.

P.8-2

microSD™ Memory Card

Save files to Memory Card to expand handset memory or backup your handset files.

P.8-18

Display

Change Wallpaper, System Graphics, Fonts, et cetera to customise handset interface.

P.9-3

Custom Screen

Load uni-themed Wallpaper, Indicators, ringtones, and more, all at the same time.

P.9-6

Display Language

Change Phone Settings to make handset user interface appear in either English or Japanese.

P.9-6

Face Recognition

Save up to five facial images to use along with passwords, etc. to restrict handset access.

P.9-18

Bluetooth® & High-Speed Infrared

Wirelessly exchange handset files with compatible devices. Use Bluetooth® headsets, etc.

P.10-2, P.10-10

Mass Storage

Use a PC to directly access Memory Card content while card is inserted into handset.

P.10-14

Calendar & Tasks

Add events by date with time parameters; set Reminder, add stamps and set other options.

P.11-2, P.11-7

Voice Recorder

Save voice memos on handset or Memory Card; send via S! Mail or use as ringtone.

P.11-15

Barcodes & Text Scanner

Scan UPC/QR Codes and text or create QR Codes from Phone Book entries, etc.

P.11-18, P.11-21, P.11-22

S! FeliCa

Hold handset over compatible reader/writers to use e-money services, etc. all around Japan.

P.16-2

S! Cast

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals delivered overnight to your handset automatically.

P.17-2

Near Chat

Exchange instant messages with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten metres.

P.18-4

Optional Services**Call Forwarding**

Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number.

P.12-2

Voicemail

Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail; access messages from handset/touchtone landline.

P.12-4

Missed Call Notification

Receive records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

P.12-5

Call Waiting

Reduce missed calls! Answer incoming calls even while the handset is already engaged.

P.12-5

Conference Call

Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for wireless teleconferencing.

P.12-6

Call Barring

Restrict all incoming/outgoing calls or apply restrictions by type of call/current location.

P.12-7

Caller ID

Set handset to show/hide your phone number for all outgoing calls or enter show/hide prefix.

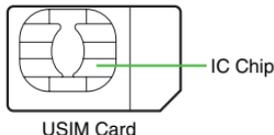
P.12-10

USIM Card

General Information & Precautions

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number, and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS messages. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

- Save contacts on USIM Card Phone Book (see **P.4-3**).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device.
SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.



Note ► Some downloaded files may be inaccessible after repairs, USIM Card replacement or handset upgrade/replacement.

■ If Handset is Dropped or Subjected to Shocks

Handset may not recognise USIM Card; **REFRESH** appears and handset returns to Standby. This is not a malfunction.

If **Insert USIM Card** appears or handset does not restart, clean and properly reinsert USIM Card then restart handset.

Important

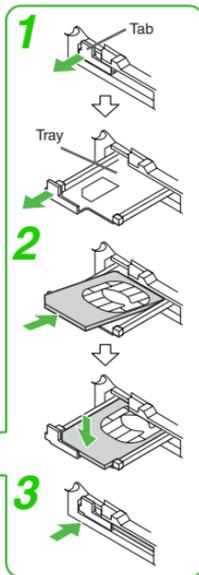
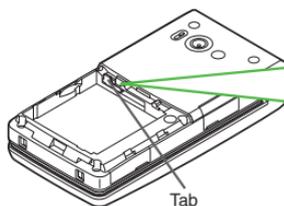
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Backup USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

Inserting & Removing USIM Card

- Follow the steps below after removing battery (see **P.1-16**).
- Do not force USIM Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
- Avoid touching USIM Card IC chip; doing so may hinder performance (see **P.1-4**). Avoid touching USIM Card terminals as well.

Inserting

- 1** Using Tab, pull out Tray as shown until it clicks
- 2** Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing up
- 3** Push in Tray fully
- 4** Insert battery (Steps 3 - 4 in "Inserting" on P.1-16)

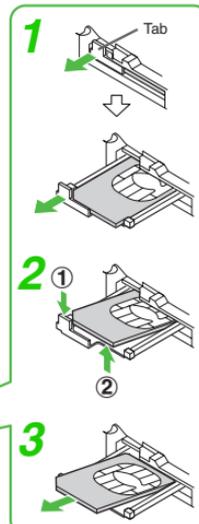
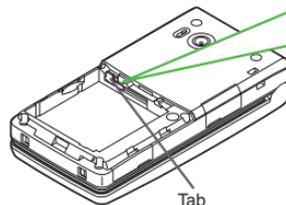


Tip ► USIM Tray: see **P.1-6**.

Removing

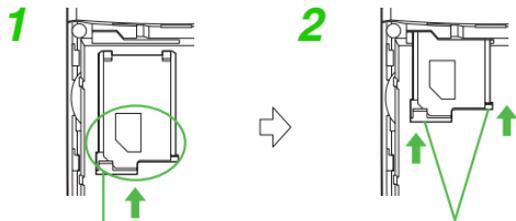
Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

- 1** Using Tab, pull out Tray as shown until it clicks
- 2** Hold down Tab and lift USIM Card as shown.
- 3** Slide out USIM Card as shown
- 4** Insert battery (Steps 3 - 4 in "Inserting" on P.1-16)



USIM Tray

If Tray is dislodged, re-insert it as shown below.
Do not forcefully remove Tray; damage may result.



Place Tray into the compartment, sliding it in until it snaps into place.

Use tabs to push Tray into slot completely.

USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card: **PIN1** and **PIN2**.

PIN1

A 4-digit to 8-digit Security Code to prevent unauthorised use of handset.

- PIN 1 is **9999** by default; change as needed (see **P.9-22** "Change PIN").
- Activate PIN Entry (see **P.9-21**) to require PIN1 entry each time handset (USIM Card inserted) is turned on.

PIN2

Required to clear Call Costs or set Max Cost (see **P.2-15**). PIN 2 is **9999** by default; change as needed (see **P.9-22** "Change PIN").

PIN Lock & PUK Code

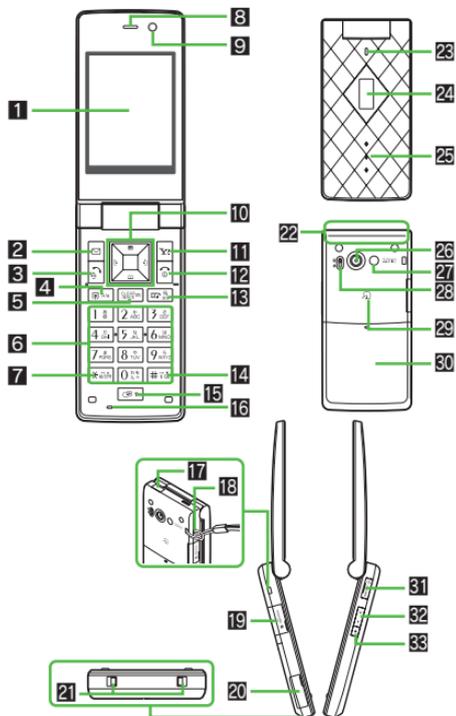
PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively. Cancel PIN Lock (see **P.9-21**) by entering the Personal Unlocking Key (PUK Code). For information on PUK Code, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

- Note** ▶
- If PUK Code is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled. Write down PUK Code.
 - For USIM Card unlocking procedures, call SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).
 - Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible when PIN Entry (see **P.9-21**) is active. See **P.2-3** "Emergency Calls".

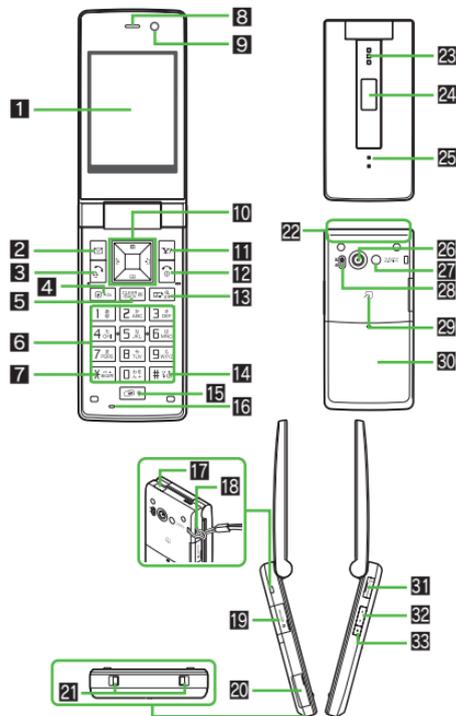
Handset Parts & Functions

Handset

810SH



811SH



1 Display**2 Mail Key**

Open Messaging menu or execute Soft Key functions (see P.1-22).

3 Start Key

Initiate/answer calls. Open records of All Calls.

4 Shortcuts & A/a Key

Open Shortcuts menu. In text entry windows, toggle upper/lower case roman letters or standard/small hiragana/katakana.

5 Clear/Back Key

Delete entries, escape/return to previous window.

6 Keypad**7 * Key**

In text entry windows, toggle Symbol/Pictogram Lists.

8 Earpiece**9 Internal Camera**

Use during Video Call.

10 Multi Selector & Keypad Lock Key

Select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

11 Yahoo! Keitai Key

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu or execute Soft Key functions (see P.1-22).

12 Power On/Off Key

Press and hold to turn handset power on/off.

13 Multimedia/Text Key

Start Media Player or change character entry mode. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Simple Menu.

14 # Key**15 Multi Job/Manner Key**

Toggle multiple active function windows. Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner mode.

16 Microphone**17 Infrared Port**

Use for infrared data transmissions.

18 Strap Eyelet

Attach straps as shown; avoid metallic straps.

19 Memory Card Slot

Insert Memory Card here.

20 External Device Port

Connect Charger here.

21 Charger Terminal**22 Internal Antenna Location**

Handset transmits/receives signals via Internal Antenna.

23 Speaker**24 External Display****25 Small Light**

Flashes for calls/new mail; illuminates red while charging.

26 External Camera (lens cover)**27 Mobile Light**

Use as strobe/Pen Light.

28 Portrait (👤)/Macro (🌱) Selector**29** 🔄 Logo

⚠️ FeliCa contactless IC Card embedded. Place 🔄 logo over reader/writer to use IC Card.

30 Battery Cover**31** VIDEO OUT/Headphone/Optical Digital Line-In Port

Connect optional Headphones, supplied Video Cable, etc.

32 Volume/Zoom Key

Adjust Earpiece Volume or zoom mobile camera.

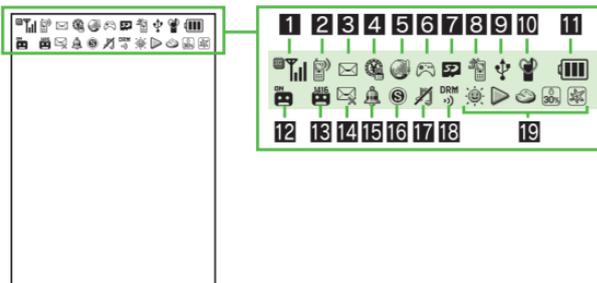
33 Shutter Key

In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera (handset open) or to turn on Pen Light (handset closed).

Note ▶ **Internal Antenna**

- Handset has no external antenna. Handset transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna.
- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.
- Voice quality varies with handset usage/location.
- For better reception in Standby, close handset (see P.1-11).

Tip ▶ Descriptions (P.1-8 - 1-9) are illustrative of general handset usage.

Display Indicators**Display****1** Network Service/Signal Strength

- 📶: Within 3G range, 📶: Within GSM range
- 📶: Strong, 📶: Moderate, 📶: Low, 📶: Weak
- 📶: Out-of-Range

2 Voice/Video Call, Offline Mode (see P.2-20)**SSL (see P.14-3), Packet Transmission (see P.14-2)**

- 📞: Incoming Voice Call, 📞: Voice Call in Progress
- 📞: Video Call in Progress, 📞: Offline Mode, 📞: SSL
- 📶: Packet Transmission Available
- 📶: Packet Transmission Ready
- 📶: Packet Transmission in Progress

3 Mail (see P.13-3)

- 📧: Unread Mail, 📧: Unread Delivery Report
- 📧: (red): Memory Low
- 📧: Receiving Mail, 📧: Sending Mail

4 IC Card Lock Active

5 Auto Delivery Info, Cast Info (see P.17-2)**Software Update (see P.19-8)**

- : Auto Delivery Info, : Cast Info
- : Software Update, : Software Update Result
- : Live Monitor Info

6 S! Application (see P.15-5), Music Player (see P.7-9)**Loudspeaker, Microphone Mute (see P.2-11)**

- : Active S! Application, : Paused S! Application
- : Music Player Active
- : Loudspeaker Active, : Microphone Muted
- : Loudspeaker Active & Microphone Muted

7 Memory Card Status

- : Inserted, : In Use, : Formatting
- : Unusable/Poor Connection

8 Call Forwarding/Voicemail (see P.12-2), Multi Job (see P.1-25)

- : Call Forwarding or Voicemail Active
- Appears when **Always** (forwarding condition) is set for Voice Calls.
- : Multiple Functions (Multi Job) Active

9 External Transmission, PC Site Browser (see P.14-17)

- : USB Transmission Ready, : USB Transmission in Progress
- : Infrared Connection in Progress, : Infrared Transmission in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Transmission Ready
- Appears in grey when Visibility is set to **Hide My Phone**.
- : Bluetooth® Transmission in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Talk in Progress
- : PC Site Browser in Use

10 Mode (see P.9-2)

- : Manner, : Drive, : Original

11 Battery Strength (see P.1-15)

- Indicator may appear vertically (e.g. ).

12 Answer Phone (see P.2-9)

- : Answer Phone Active
- : Answer Phone Active & Message Recorded
- : Answer Phone Cancelled & Message Recorded

13 New Voicemail (see P.12-4)**14 Message Delivery Failure (see P.13-9)****15 Alarm (see P.11-11), Schedule (see P.11-3)**

- : Alarm Set
- : Reminder Set, : Reminder Unset

16 Show Secret Data (see P.9-24)**Function Lock (see P.9-22), Keypad Lock (see P.1-21)**

- : Show Secret Data Active
- : Function Lock Active, : Keypad Lock Active

17 Ringtone (see P.9-12), Vibration (see P.9-13)

- : Silent, : Increasing Volume, : Vibration Active
- : Silent & Vibration Active

18 Copyright Information, Infrared Transmission

- : Content Key Received
- When Content Key memory is low,  (below 10 %) or  (below 5 %) appears.
-  (grey): Infrared Transmission Ready

19 Weather Indicator (see P.17-4)

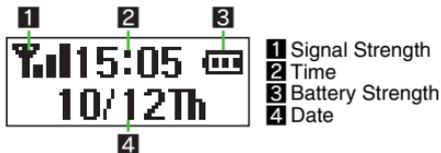
External Display

Press any Side Key with handset closed to turn External Display Backlight on. External Display shuts off/Backlight turns off after set duration/Backlight time (see **P.9-9** "External Display Settings").

Tip ▶ On 810SH, External Display shuts off and Backlight turns off. On 811SH, only Backlight turns off.

Indicators

See major External Display indicators below.



Clock View

- While External Display Backlight is on (with handset closed), press to toggle Clock view (large, small, World Clock or clock & date).
 - Display Date & Time setting (see **P.9-10**) is not affected.
 - View is fixed while music plays, during infrared transfers, etc.

Additional Indicators

Indicator and number of calls/messages, etc. appear for missed calls, new mail/information, etc.

Missed Calls		New Messages	
Answer Phone Message		New Delivery Report	
Missed Call Notification		Message Delivery Failure	
New Voicemail		Content Key	
Alarm		Bluetooth® Notification	
Schedule Reminder		Cast Info	
Task Reminder		Cast Reception Failure	

Up to two indicators appear at the same time. Press or to view more.

Handset Positions

Handset Closed

Handset is closed. Keep handset in this position when not in use.



Handset Open

Handset is open. Place or answer calls, enter text, etc.



Battery & Charger

Getting Started

Charge battery before first use/after period of disuse.

Battery Life

- Do not use/store battery at extreme temperatures; this may shorten battery life.
Ideally, use/store between 5°C - 35°C.
- Use specified Charger only; others may damage handset/battery or overheat or ignite battery.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.

Charging

- Do not use Charger for other purposes.
- Contact with metal may short, overheat or burst battery.
- Small Light illuminates red while charging. (It may take longer for the light to illuminate when handset is off.)

- Charging takes approximately 150 minutes (with handset off).
 - **Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.**
- Handset and Charger may warm during charging.
- Separate Charger from TV/radio if interference occurs.

Precautions

- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.
- Avoid:
 - Extreme temperatures
 - Humidity, dust and vibration
 - Direct sunlight
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

Tip ►

- Battery must be inside handset to charge it.
- While charging battery with handset on,  flashes until battery is fully charged.
- Battery will charge regardless of handset position.

Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)

Continuous Talk Time	2 hours 30 minutes in 3G 4 hours 20 minutes in GSM
Continuous Standby Time	330 hours
Continuous Operating Time	5 hours
Continuous Playback Time	12 hours
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	80 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)

Values calculated with Backlight Brightness set to **Level 2**.

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).
- Continuous Operating Time is the length of time handset keys can be pressed continuously without calls.
- Continuous Playback Time is measured while music plays using Headphones, Offline Mode cancelled, and handset closed.
- The above values (Battery Time) are nominal values, measured under stable signal conditions.

Battery Time

Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time:

- **Poor Usage Conditions**
 - Extreme temperatures (use within a range of 5°C to 35°C)
 - Impaired handset, battery or Charger terminals
 - Signal is weak/handset is out-of-range
- **Power Consuming Operations**
 - Activating/using S! Applications
 - Repeated mobile camera use or barcode scanning
 - Frequent use of Mobile Light
 - Playing video images
 - Frequent use of Pen Light
 - Continuous Keypad use (keeping backlights on for long periods)
 - Using Music Player/Voice Recorder
 - Frequent Bluetooth® transmissions
 - Frequent infrared transfers
 - Frequent opening/closing of handset
- **Power Consuming Settings**
 - Increasing Backlight Time Out/Display Saving time
 - Setting Backlight to illuminate brighter
 - Activating Bluetooth® in Standby

Extend Battery Time

Select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time (see P.9-9) to extend Battery Time.

When Battery Runs Out

A message appears and short beeps sound.

Press  to stop short beeps. (Short beeps do not sound in Manner mode.)

During Voice Call

A double beep sounds every five seconds. After 20 seconds, the call ends and handset shuts down.

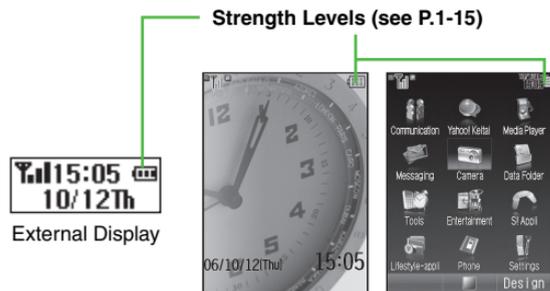
During Video Call

A message appears and call ends with a double beep, then short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Battery Strength

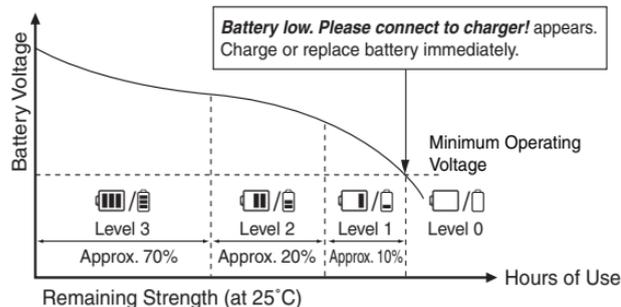


When battery runs out, **Battery low. Please connect to charger!** appears and short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

Indicator

Battery Strength indicator varies as shown.

Charge or replace when level is low.



Battery Strength & Environment

At low temperatures, battery is consumed faster.

At high temperatures, battery lasts longer.

- Note** ▶
- Battery Strength indicator is for reference only.
 - At Level 1, some functions including Video Camera, Music Player and Voice Recorder do not operate (see P.6-8, P.7-9, P.11-15).

Small Light & Battery Strength Indicator

Handset Power On

Small Light	Indicator ()	Conditions
Off	Flashes	Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C to 35°C
Flashes red	Flashes	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Flashes	Charging
Off	On	Charging completed/Standby

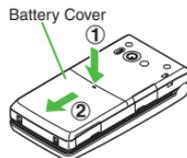
Handset Power Off

Small Light	Indicator ()	Conditions
Flashes red	Off	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Off	Charging
Off	Off	Charging completed

Installing & Removing Battery

Inserting

- 1 Press down and slide cover as shown**

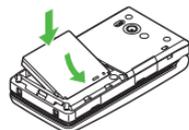


- 2 Lift and remove cover as shown**



- 3 Insert battery**

- With printed side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.



- 4 Close cover**

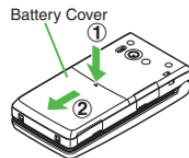
- Position and slide the cover as shown until it stops.



Removing

- Turn handset power off before removing battery.
- Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.

- 1 Press down and slide cover as shown**

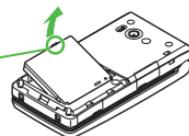


- 2 Lift and remove cover as shown**



- 3 Remove battery**

- Take hold of Battery Tab here and lift as shown.



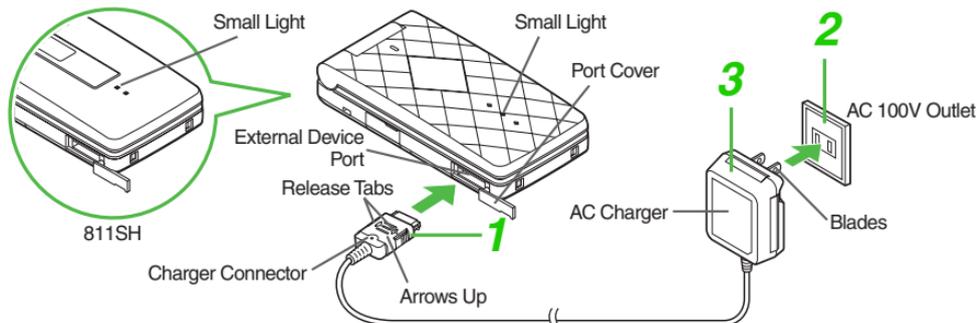
Tip ▶ This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
 - Short-circuit battery
 - Disassemble battery

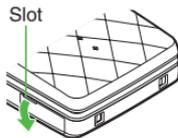


Li-ion

AC Charger


Use specified Charger only.
1 Rotate Port Cover as shown above to connect Charger

- Insert connector until it clicks.
- Use slot to gently pull Port Cover down and out as shown.


2 Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-15). Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
- Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.
- Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)


3 After Charging
Unplug Charger from AC outlet, then handset

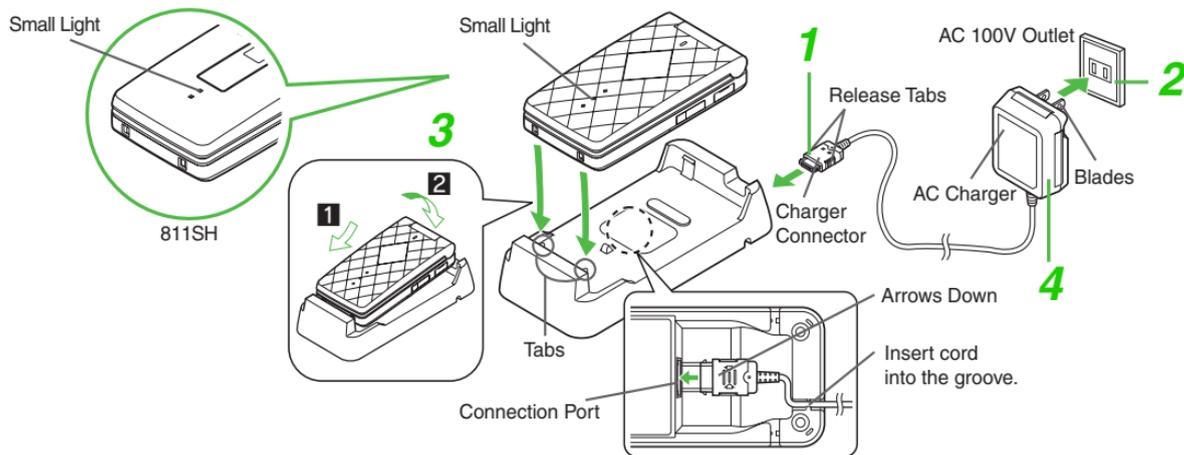
- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

Note

- Do not pull, bend or twist AC Charger cord.
- AC Charger is compatible with household currents between AC 100V and 240V.
- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Desktop Holder

Desktop Holder may be purchased separately.



Use specified Charger only.

1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder until it clicks

- Connection Port is on the back of Desktop Holder.

2 Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)



3 Gently insert handset into Desktop Holder

- Fit tabs into slots as shown in **1** and push handset as indicated in **2** until it clicks into place (resting flat).
- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-15). Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
- Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.

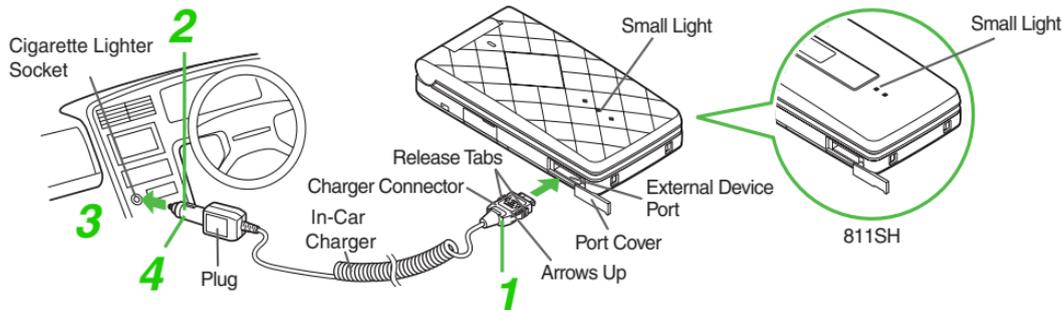
4 After Charging

Unplug Charger from outlet and remove handset

- To remove connector, squeeze release tabs.

In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.



1 Rotate Port Cover as shown above to connect Charger

- Insert connector until it clicks.

2 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

3 Start car engine

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-15). Charging takes approximately 150 minutes.
- Charging is complete when Small Light goes out.

- Tip ►**
- For more information, see In-Car Charger manual.
 - Use optional In-Car Holder to secure handset.

4 After Charging Unplug Charger from cigarette lighter socket, then handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

- Note ►**
- Use In-Car Charger only when vehicle has a negative earth.
 - Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
 - Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
 - Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.
 - Never use handset while driving.

Handset Power On/Off



Standby

1 Open handset

2 Press and hold

After Power On Graphic, handset enters Standby.

3 Turning Off

Press for 2+ seconds

After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

My Details Setup & Network Information

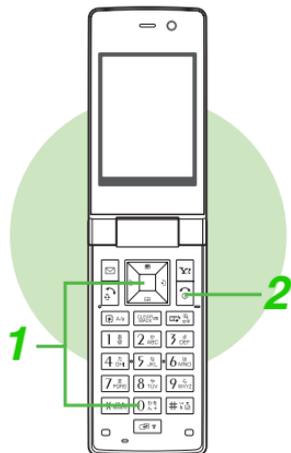
- When handset is turned on for the first time, setup confirmation appears after Power On Graphic.
Choose Yes ➔ **Press**  ➔ **Enter last name** ➔ **Press**  ➔ **Enter first name** ➔ **Press** 
- Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when ,  or  is pressed for the first time.
Choose Yes ➔ **Press** 
- Retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services. (Clock is set automatically after retrieval.)
- To update Network Information manually, see **P.10-16** "Retrieve NW Info".
- Unless otherwise noted, operations in this manual are described with Clock set.

Return to Standby

- Press  to return to Standby from function windows, menus, etc.
 - When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press . Handset returns to Standby.

- Note** ▶
- USIM Card data is read after turning power on. Signal strength indicator may take some time to appear. It may take longer when turning power on for the first time.
 - **Insert USIM Card** appears when USIM Card is not inserted (see **P.1-4**).
 - Some functions are disabled if handset is left with power off or out-of-range for long periods. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

- Tip** ▶ Display turns off after a period of inactivity.



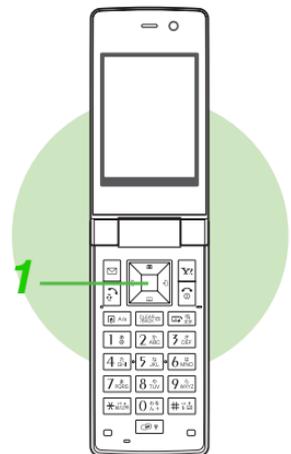
My Details

1 Press  **0 P.S.**

Handset phone number appears.

- To add, edit or delete My Details, see **P.4-19**.

2 Press  to exit



Keypad Lock

Use Keypad Lock to lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

Activating

1 Press  for 1+ seconds

 appears and Keypad Lock is set.

Cancelling

1 Press  for 1+ seconds

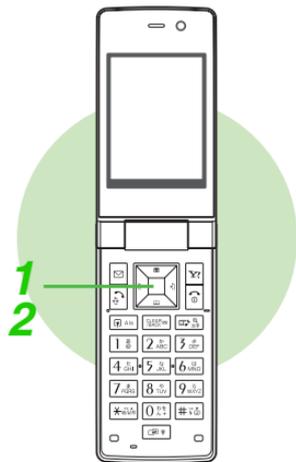
 disappears.

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Keypad Lock is active. See **P.2-3** "Emergency Calls".

Tip ▶ When Keypad Lock is Active

- Incoming calls temporarily cancel Keypad Lock. To answer a call, press . [Activate Any Key Answer (see **P.9-2**) to answer calls with other keys (see **P.2-6**).] Keypad lock reactivates after the call.
- Handset power does not turn off even if  is pressed for 2+ seconds.

Handset Menus



Main Menu

Shortcut to Custom Screens (see P.9-6).

Main Menu

Access functions/operations from **Main Menu**.

- 1** Press Main Menu opens.
- 2** Use to select an item and press Sub Menu opens (see P.19-2 - 19-3).

Soft Keys

- Soft Key functions appear at the bottom of Display.



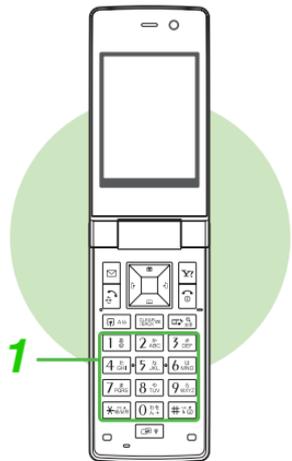
Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

■ Main Menu Items

Communication	Launch S! Town, S! Loop or Near Chat
Yahoo! Keitai	Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites
Media Player	Play/download music/video
Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Camera	Capture still images or record video
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/ Memory Card
Tools	Use Calendar, Alarms, etc.
Entertainment	Launch ComicSurfing®/S! Cast or read E-Books
S! Appli	Use/download S! Applications
Lifestyle-appli	Customise IC Card settings to use e-money services, etc.
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customise handset interface, sounds, etc.



User Shortcuts

Using Shortcuts

Press a key (1 - 9) to access assigned function, folder or menu.

Default Shortcuts:

1	Received Msg.	2	Create Message
3	Bookmarks	4	Calendar
5	Phone Book List	6	Data Folder
7	Calculator	8	Alarms
9	Bluetooth®		



Shortcuts Menu

1 Press a key (1 - 9) for 1+ seconds

Assigned function, folder or menu opens.

Editing Shortcuts

Edit items except **Main Menu** and **Enter Number**.

Assign

Change default shortcuts

Press **Assign** ➔ Select an item ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Assign** ➔ Press **Assign** ➔ Select new item ➔ Press **Assign**

Move

Change the order of items

Press **Assign** ➔ Select an item ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Move** ➔ Press **Move** ➔ Use **Up/Down** to select target location ➔ Press **Move**

Set to Default

Restore default shortcuts

Press **Assign** ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Set to Default** ➔ Press **Set to Default** ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press **Set to Default**

Quick Operations

In Standby, enter numbers to access functions. Accessible functions vary by entered digits. To activate functions, press corresponding Soft Key.

Function \ Digits	Digits						
	1	2	3	4	5 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 32
Speed Dial (see P.4-14)	○ ¹	×	×	×	×	×	×
Speed Video Call (see P.4-14)	○ ¹	×	×	×	×	×	×
Calculator (see P.11-14)	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Expenses Memo (see P.11-25)	○	○	○	○	○	×	×
Speed Mail (see P.13-34)	○ ²	×	×	×	×	×	×
Calendar (see P.11-2)	×	×	×	○ ³	×	×	×
Set Alarm (see P.11-11)	×	×	×	○ ⁴	×	×	×
Place International Calls ⁵ (see P.2-5)	×	×	×	×	○	○	○

¹Except for 0.

²Press  Mail after entering a number. Save entries to Speed Mail List (see P.13-34) beforehand.

³Enter four digits for month and day and press  to view entries up to 12 months forward of current date.

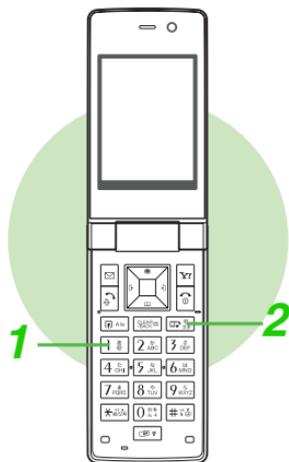
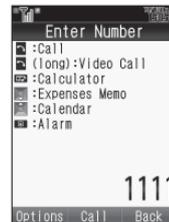
⁴Enter four digits for time (24-hour format) to set Alarm.

⁵Call to Japan appears when outside Japan.

Example: Enter 1111 to use Calculator

1 Press    

2 Press 



Multi Job

Open a function window while another is active.

1 In a function window, press

Shortcuts menu opens.

- Some shortcuts are disabled.
- Multi Job cannot be activated from some windows/under some conditions (e.g. when an S! Application is active).
- In text/phone number entry windows, press  for 1+ seconds.

2 Select a function and press

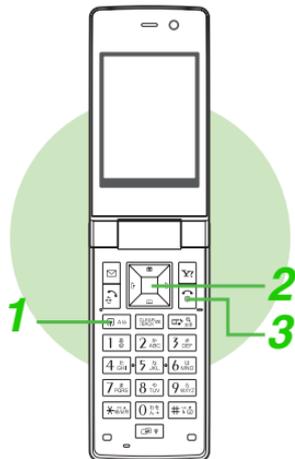
Menu/window opens ( appears).

- Press  to toggle active windows.

3 Press to exit

The other window appears ( disappears).

- When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes**
 - ➔ Press 



Handling Incoming Calls

- Press  to answer a call. End the call to return.

Pen Light

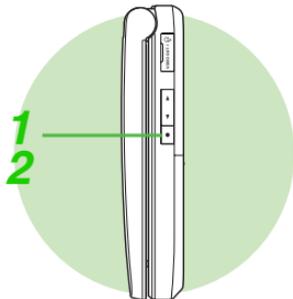
Use handset as a flashlight when handset is closed.

1 Press for 1+ seconds

Mobile Light illuminates.

2 Press to turn off

Note ➤ Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.



Security Codes

Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password are needed for handset use.

For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

Handset Code

The 4-digit number (**9999** by default) required to use/change some handset functions.

- ✖ appears when Handset Code is entered.
- If **Handset code is incorrect!** appears, try again.
- Change Handset Code as needed (see **P.9-24**).

Centre Access Code

The 4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to access Voicemail via landlines or subscribe to fee-based information.

- Note** ▶
- Write down Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password.
 - Do not reveal Handset Code, Centre Access Code and Network Password. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

- Tip** ▶ There are two other Security Codes. For details, see **P.1-6** "PIN1" and "PIN2".

Network Password

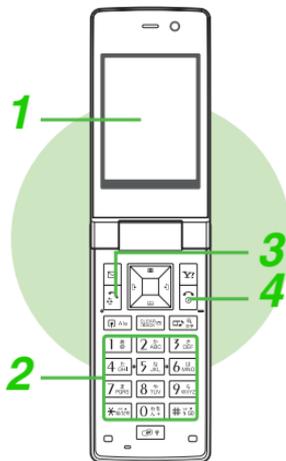
The 4-digit number (**9999** by default) required to restrict handset services (see **P.12-7**).

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).
- Change Network Password as needed (see **P.12-10**).

Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call

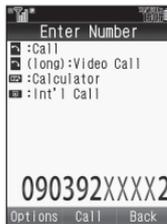
See **P.2-5** to initiate international calls from Japan, **P.2-17** for Voice Calls from outside Japan and **P.5-3** for Video Calls.



1 Confirm handset is on

- Check signal strength (see **P.1-9**).
- Handset will not transmit when **out**, or appears (see **P.19-4** - **P.19-6**).

2 Enter a phone number



- Include dialling code for all numbers.
- To send/block Caller ID, enter a phone number and press **Options** ➔ Select **Show My ID** or **Hide My ID** ➔ Press

3 Confirm the number and press

Correcting Numbers

- Use to move cursor and press to delete the digit above the cursor. Move cursor and press for 1+ seconds to delete the digits above and after the cursor.
- Before moving cursor, press for 1+ seconds to delete the entire number and return to Standby.
- If you misdial, press to hang up and try again.

Busy Numbers

- Press to end the call and try again later.

4 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close handset.
- Calling Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book
- **Would you like to save this number to your Phone Book?** appears after calls.
 - To save, choose **Yes** ➔ Press ➔ Perform Step 4 in "Saving from Call Log" on **P.4-8**
 - To end without saving, choose **No** ➔ Press
- To hide this confirmation, see **P.4-5** "Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers".

- Note** ►
- Do not cover Microphone (see **P.1-7 16**) while talking.
 - Avoid covering area over Internal Antenna (see **P.1-7 22**).
 - Voice quality is affected depending on how and where handset is used.

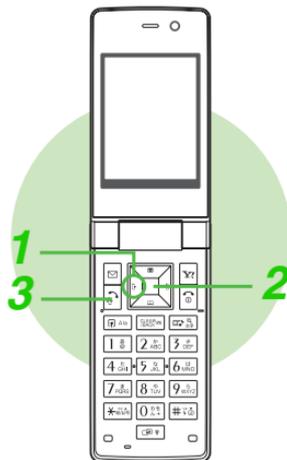
- Tip** ►
- Check Call Timers (see **P.2-14**) and Call Costs (see **P.2-15**).
 - For operations during a call, see **P.2-11 - 2-12**.

Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110, 119, 118, etc.) are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Keypad Lock (see P.1-21)	Possible
Max Cost (see P.2-15)	Possible
Offline Mode (see P.2-20)	Not Possible
PIN Entry (see P.9-21)	Not Possible
Function Lock (see P.9-22)	Possible
Handset Lock (see P.9-22)	Possible
Outgoing Calls (see P.12-8)	Possible

- Note** ► Emergency calls may not be possible when outside Japan as handset operations are affected by wireless network/radio signals available in the country or handset settings.



Redial

Place calls from Dialed Numbers. Up to 30 recently dialed numbers are saved.

1 Press



Dialed numbers appear with date and time.

- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- Press or to see more.
- Use to open Received Calls or All Calls.

2 Select a record and press

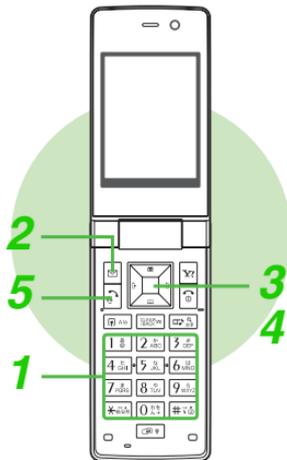
3 Press

Handset dials the number.

■ Indicators



- Tip** ►
- When the same number is dialed more than once, only the last record appears. (Records for Voice Calls and Video Calls appear separately.)
 - Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
 - When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-13**.



Placing an International Call

- See **P.2-17** to initiate Voice Calls from outside Japan.
- When calling SoftBank handsets, country code is not required.
- Service requires an additional contract. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

1 Enter a phone number

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.

Quick Operations

Enter a phone number ➔ Press **[Options]** ➔
 Select a country ➔ Press **[Int'l Call]** ➔ Skip ahead
 to Step 5

Direct Entry

Press **[0+*]** for 1+ seconds (+ appears) ➔
 Enter a country code ➔ Enter a phone
 number including the dialling code ➔ Skip
 ahead to Step 5

- Omit the first **0** of the dialling code except
 when calling Italy (country code: 39).

2 Press **[Options]**

3 Select **Int'l Call** and press **[Int'l Call]**

Country names appear.

4 Select a country and press **[Enter]**

■ To call unlisted countries, select **Enter
 Code** ➔ Press **[Country Code]** ➔ Enter country code
 ➔ Press **[Enter]**

5 Press **[Enter]**

- Tip** ➤
- In Standby, press **[0+*]** for 1+ seconds to enter + (a substitute symbol for international prefix).
 To change the default international prefix, see **P.9-25** "Int'l Prefix".
 - To save frequently used country codes, see **P.9-25** "Country Codes".

Redirecting a Call

Call Forwarding: see P.12-2

Press  **Fwd** to direct incoming call to a specified number.

Voicemail: see P.12-4

Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voicemail Centre.

Activate Missed Call Notification (see **P.12-5**) for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range.

Answer Phone: see P.2-9

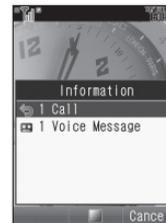
Record caller messages on handset.

Use Quick Recorder (see **P.2-10**) to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive.

Information

Information window opens for Missed Calls or Answer Phone messages.

- Select **Call** and press  to see details (see **P.2-13**).
- Select **Voice Message** and press  to play recorded messages (see **P.2-10**).



Information window opens for other items as well. Select an item and press to open the corresponding window.

To open Information list, follow these steps.

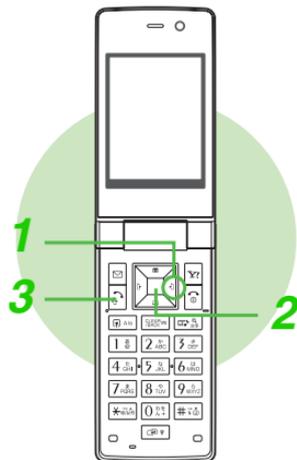
Press  **➔ Select Phone** **➔ Press**  **➔ Select Information** **➔ Press** 

- To clear list, open Information list and press  **Options**
 - ➔ Select **Reset** **➔ Press**  **➔ Choose Yes** **➔ Press** 

Answering Calls with Headphones

Press Call Button for 1+ seconds to answer a call.

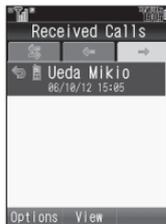
- To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.



Calling from Received Calls

Up to 30 received calls are saved. When Caller ID is sent, number appears. Place calls directly to those numbers.

1 Press ()



Received numbers appear with date and time.

- Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- Press or to see more.
- Use to open Dialed Numbers or All Calls.

2 Select a record and press

3 Press

Handset dials the number.

■ Indicators

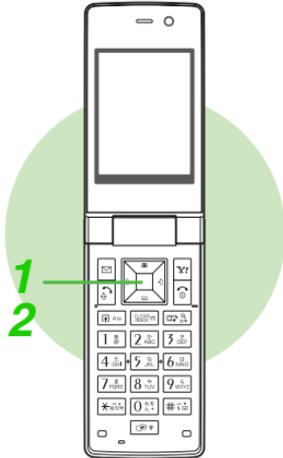
	Answered Voice Call		Answered Video Call
	Missed Voice Call		Missed Video Call
	Rejected Voice Call		Rejected Video Call
	Missed Call Notification		Forwarded to Voicemail Centre
	Answer Phone Answered		

- Tip** ▶
- Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.
 - Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
 - When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-13**.

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset.

- Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Offline Mode. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available (see **P.12-4**).
- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Answer Phone and Voice Memo (see **P.2-12**).
- Answer Phone is inactive by default.



Activating & Cancelling

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Answer Phone

1 Select **Switch On/Off** and press

- To sample outgoing message, select **Outgoing Message** ▶ Press
- Press to stop.

Tip ▶ Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds in Standby to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

- Note ▶
- When less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, Answer Phone is disabled. Delete messages to activate Answer Phone.
 - Answer Phone is not available for incoming Video Calls.
 - In Manner, Drive or Original mode, respective Answer Phone setting (see **P.9-2**) takes priority.

2 Activating

1 Choose **On** and press

- Press to return to Standby (appears). (appears when messages are recorded.)

Cancelling

1 Choose **Off** and press

When Answer Phone is Active

- For incoming calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts.
 - Recording continues even if handset is closed.
 - To answer calls, press during recording (no message will be recorded).
 - When recording ends, appears.
- If recording capacity becomes full after the recording, Answer Phone is cancelled and appears.

Playing Messages

Main Menu ▶ Phone

1 Select *Play Messages* and press

Number of recordings appears and playback starts from the most recent message. After all messages have played, playback ends automatically.

-  Press  to stop playback.
-  To skip a message, press  **Next** or .
-  To play the previous message, press  twice during playback.
-  To delete a message, press  **Delete** during playback ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press 

Note ▶ Message playback stops for incoming calls. Press  to answer a call.

Tip ▶ Alternatively, press  in Standby to play messages.

Earpiece Volume

■ Follow these steps to activate or mute Earpiece for outgoing message/caller message recordings.

Press  ▶ **Select Settings** ▶ Press  ▶ Use  to select **Call/Video Call** ▶ **Select Answer Phone** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Volume** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Link to Profile or Silent** ▶ Press 

- For **Link to Profile**, current Earpiece Volume applies.

Answer Time

■ Adjust ring time between 0 and 30 seconds (Answer Phone waits to answer calls).

Press  ▶ **Select Settings** ▶ Press  ▶ Use  to select **Call/Video Call** ▶ **Select Answer Phone** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Answer Time** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter time (00 - 30) ▶ Press 

- To start recording immediately after a call arrives, enter **00** for time ▶ Press 
- Answer Time is **09** seconds by default.

■ When Answer Phone and Voicemail or Call Forwarding are both active, the function with the shortest ring time takes priority.

Example:

Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

Ring time for Voicemail or Call Forwarding: 10 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

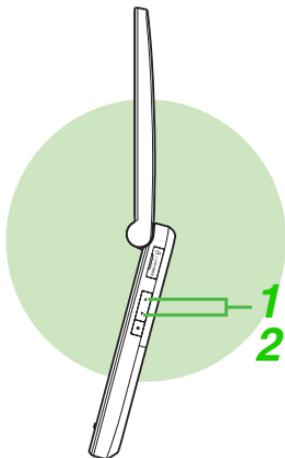
- If Answer Phone is full or handset is in Offline Mode or out-of-range, incoming calls are handled by Voicemail or Call Forwarding.

Quick Recorder

■ Use Quick Recorder to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive. When a call arrives, follow these steps. Outgoing message plays and caller's message is recorded.

Press  **Options** ▶ **Select Record Message** ▶ Press 

Engaged Call Operations



Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels).

- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.
- To adjust Earpiece Volume in Standby, see **P.9-15**.
- Earpiece Volume is **Level 3** by default.

1 During a call, press or

2 Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume

Voice Output

Loudspeaker Use Loudspeaker for handsfree conversations

During a call, press .

To cancel, press .

Mute Mute Microphone
Other party's voice is audible

During a call, press **Mute** .

To cancel, press **Unmute** .

Hold Hold tone sounds and each other's voice is not audible

Subscription to Call Waiting (see **P.12-5**) or Conference Call (see **P.12-6**) is required.

During a call, press **Options** **Select Hold** **Press** .

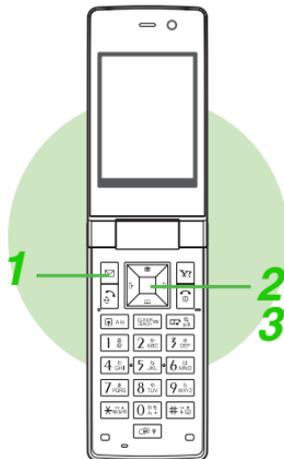
To cancel, press **Options** **Select Retrieve** **Press** .

Alternatively, press .

Touch Tones

Use Touch Tones to send alphanumeric messages to pagers or operate a home answerphone remotely.

- Use **0 - 9**, ***** and **#** to send Touch Tones.



Voice Memo

Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Voice Memo and Answer Phone (see P.2-9).

1 During a call, press **Options**

2 Select **Record** and press

Recording starts.

3 Press to stop

- Alternatively, end call to stop. (Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.)

Play

Play Voice Memos

Main Menu ▶ Phone

Select **Play Messages** ▶ Press

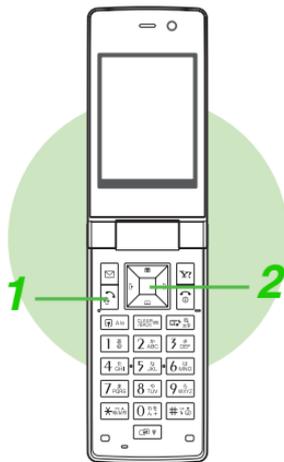
For details, see P.2-10 "Playing Messages".

Other Engaged Call Operations

Open Phone Book Entry	Open Phone Book entries or check My Details Press Options ▶ Select Phone Book List ▶ Press ▶ Select an entry (or My Details) ▶ Press
Save Phone Book Entry	Save the other party's number to Phone Book Press Options ▶ Select Phone Book List ▶ Press ▶ Press Options ▶ Select Add New Entry ▶ Press ▶ Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4
Open Message	Check received/sent/draft messages Press Options ▶ Select Messaging ▶ Press ▶ Select an item ▶ Press
Create Message	Create a new message Press Options ▶ Select Messaging ▶ Press ▶ Select Create Message or Create New SMS ▶ Press ▶ Perform from Step 3 on P.13-8 or on P.13-7
Dial New Number	Call another number Press Options ▶ Select Dial New Number ▶ Press ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Press
Enable/Disable DTMF	Select whether to send Touch Tones during a call Press Options ▶ Select Disable DTMF or Enable DTMF ▶ Press

Tip ▶ To switch sound output between handset and handsfree devices during a call, see P.10-8 "Sound Output".

Call Log



Open the following records:

All Calls	All dialled/received calls
Dialled Numbers	All dialled calls
Received Calls	All received calls

1 Press

All Calls opens.

Press to open others.

2 Select a record and press

Record details appear.

Tip ▶ Press to open All Calls during a call.

Delete

Delete records one at a time

Press → Select a record → Press **Options** → Select *Delete* → Press → Choose Yes → Press

Delete All

Delete all records

Press → Open *All Calls, Dialled Numbers or Received Calls* → Press **Options** → Select *Delete All* → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press → Choose Yes → Press

Tip ▶ To save phone numbers to Phone Book, see P.4-8 "Saving from Call Log".

Using Call Log

Call

Place calls

Press → Select a record → Press **Options** → Select *Call or Video Call* → Press

Press → Select a record → Press **Options** → Select *Edit Before Call* → Press → Edit number → Press (Long Press for Video Calls)

Create Message

Create messages

Press → Select a record → Press **Options** → Select *Create Message* → Press → Select *S! Mail or SMS* → Press → Perform from Step 5 on P.13-8 or press and perform from Step 5 on P.13-7

Call Timers/Data Counter



Call Timers

Check estimated time of the most recent call (Last Call Time) and all calls made since Clear Timers was last applied (All Calls Time).

- Times for Dialed Calls and Received Calls appear separately.
- To show elapsed Call Time during a call, see **P.9-27** "Call Time Counter".

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Time & Cost ► Call Timers

- 1 Select *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls* and press**
- 2 Press to return to Call Timers menu**
 - Press to return to Standby.

- Tip** ►
- Last Call Time and All Calls Time remain even after handset power is turned off.
 - Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. On hold time is counted.

Clear Timers Reset Call Timers

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Time & Cost ► Call Timers

Select **Clear Timers** ► Press ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ► Choose Yes ► Press

Data Counter

- Check estimated volume of the most recent or all packet transmissions (sent, received and total). Charges do not appear.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Time & Cost ► Data Counter

- 1 Select *Last Data* or *All Data* and press**
- 2 Press to return to Data Counter menu**
 - Press to return to Standby.

Clear Counter Reset Data Counter

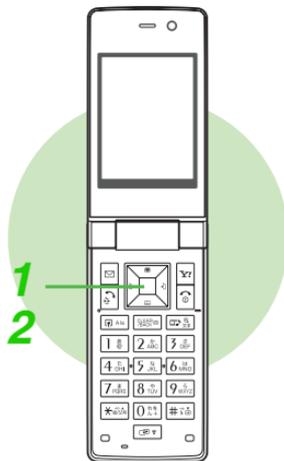
Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Time & Cost ► Data Counter

Select **Clear Counter** ► Press ► Choose Yes ► Press

Call Costs

Check estimated call charge of the most recent call or all calls.

To show Call Cost automatically after each call, see P.9-27 "Display Call Cost".



Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Costs

1 Select **Last Call or All Calls** and press **■**

2 Press **■** to return to Call Costs menu
• Press **☎** to return to Standby.

Tip ▶
• Call Costs remain even after handset power is turned off.
• Sum of charges appears for Conference Call (Optional Service).

Clear Costs Reset Call Costs

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Costs

Select **Clear Costs** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press **■** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **■**

Cost Units Set currency and conversion rate (per yen) to show converted amount in Call Costs

Default: YEN 1

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Costs ▶ Cost Units

Press **☎** **Edit** ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter currency ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter conversion rate ▶ Press **■** ▶ Press **■**

Limit Call Costs

Max Cost Set a limit of total call charges
When the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Costs ▶ Max Cost

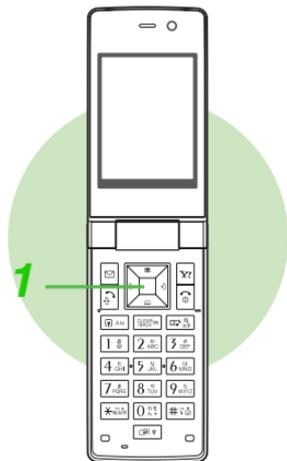
Press **☎** **Set** ▶ Select **Set** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter the amount ▶ Press **■**

▶ To cancel Max Cost, press **☎** **Set** ▶ Select **Unset** ▶ Press **■**

▶ To change Max Cost, press **☎** **Edit** ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter the amount ▶ Press **■**

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when the limit is reached. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

Outside Japan (International Roaming)



Switching Network Services

Auto	3G and GSM switch automatically by location (Network status)
3G	Use in Japan or in 3G service areas abroad
GSM	Use in GSM service areas outside Japan

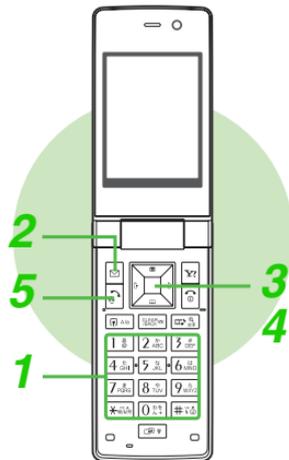
3G is set by default.

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Network Settings (☰)* ► *Select Service*

1 Select **Auto**, **3G** or **GSM** and press

Selected service is activated.

- Note** ►
- For information on international roaming (service areas, charges, available functions, restrictions, etc.), contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).
 - A separate contract is required for international roaming.



Calling from Outside Japan

1 Enter a phone number

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.
- When calling landlines or mobile phones within the country, skip ahead to Step 5.

Quick Operations

Enter a phone number → Press → Skip ahead to Step 4

Direct Entry

Press for 1+ seconds (+ appears) →

Enter a country code → Enter a phone number including the dialling code → Skip ahead to Step 5

- Omit the first 0 of the dialling code except when calling Italy (country code: 39).

2 Press Options

3 Select *Int'l Call* and press

Country names appear.

- To call Japan, select *Call to Japan* → Press → Skip ahead to Step 5

4 Select a country and press

- + and country code are inserted before the phone number. The first 0 is omitted except when calling Italy (39). (+ indicates an outgoing international call.)

■ To call unlisted countries, select *Enter Code* → Press → Enter country code → Press

Calling SoftBank Handsets

- Always select *日本 (JPN)* (or press for direct entry).

5 Press

Note ▶ In some areas, other parties may not be able to hear you and vice versa after returning to calls on hold (see P.2-11).

Tip ▶ Adding Country Codes

To save frequently used country codes, see P.9-25 "Country Codes". For more information, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.19-28).

Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theatres, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, lifts, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner-Related Features

■ Manner Mode: see P.2-19

Press Manner Key to automatically mute all ringtones and activate Vibration mode for incoming calls, mail, etc.

■ Vibration Mode: see P.9-13

Activate Vibration mode to use handset vibration to alert you to incoming calls, mail, etc. in public places.

■ Volume Settings: see P.9-12

When carrying handset in public places, decrease or mute ringtone volume for incoming calls, mail, etc. as well as tones for Internet or S! Applications.

■ Offline Mode: see P.2-20

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. Offline Mode blocks all calls/Internet transmissions.

■ Answer Phone: see P.2-9

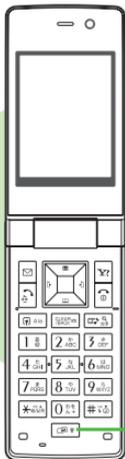
Use Answer Phone to handle incoming calls when it is inappropriate or unsafe to answer.

■ Drive Mode: see P.9-2

Activate Drive mode when driving.

Activating & Cancelling

Activate/cancel Manner mode in Standby, while browsing the Internet, during calls or while using Media Player or S! Applications.



Activating

1 Press for 1+ seconds

 appears and Manner mode is set.

-  (Answer Phone),  (Silent) and  (Silent & Vibration) appear as set in Manner settings (see **P.9-2** "Mode Settings").

Cancelling

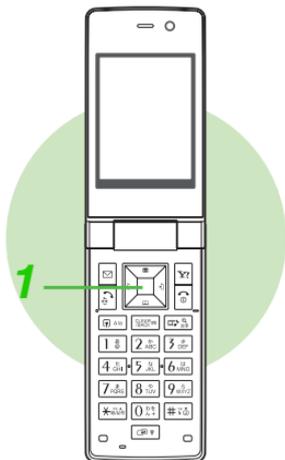
1 Press for 1+ seconds

 disappears and Manner mode is cancelled.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Keypad Tones, Power On/Off and error tones are muted. Swap Call (see **P.12-6**) beeps are audible.
 - Even in Manner mode, ringtone is audible from Headphones. Volume is fixed to **Level 1**.
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound even in Manner mode.
- Manner settings (see **P.9-2** "Mode Settings") apply to Answer Phone, ringtones, Vibration, etc.

- Tip** ▶
- While Answer Phone is recording, caller's voice is audible from Earpiece.
 - To change Manner settings, see **P.9-2** "Mode Settings".



Activating/Canceling Offline Mode

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions.

- Offline Mode blocks all calls/Internet transmissions. Bluetooth®/infrared transmissions are available.
- Offline Mode is **Off** by default.

Activating

Main Menu ► Settings ► Network Settings
 ► Offline Mode

1 Choose **On** and press 

 appears and Offline Mode is set.

Canceling

Main Menu ► Settings ► Network Settings
 ► Offline Mode

1 Choose **Off** and press 

 disappears and Offline Mode is cancelled.

- Tip** ►
- When Offline Mode is set while an S! Application (see **P.15-2**) is paused, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press  to enter Offline Mode. (Network connection is disabled until Offline Mode is cancelled.)
 - Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible in Offline Mode. See **P.2-3** "Emergency Calls".

Simple Menu



Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.

- Handset is limited to basic operations (see P.2-22).
- Fonts are enlarged while Simple Menu is active.



Standard Main Menu



Simple Main Menu

Press  to toggle description on/off.

Activating/Canceling Simple Menu

Activating

1 Press  for 1+ seconds

- Simple Menu remains active even after handset power is turned off.

Canceling

1 Press  for 1+ seconds

Note ▶ Some menu items, function names, etc. differ from Standard Menu.

- Tip** ▶
- Activate Simple Menu in Normal mode (see P.9-2). While Simple Menu is active, Drive and Original modes are not available.
 - A confirmation appears when Simple Menu is activated in the following cases:
 - Infrared transmission is in progress
 - SI! Application is paused
 - Media Player is active (playing background music)
 - Bluetooth® is active

Simple Menu Operations

Menus

In Standby, press  to open Simple Main Menu.

Messaging	Received Msg.	See P.13-23	
	Create Msg.	See P.13-7	
	Drafts	See P.13-18	
	Templates	See P.13-15	
	Sent Messages	See P.13-23	
	Unsent Msg.	See P.13-23	
	Create SMS	See P.13-7	
Phone	Ph. Book List	See P.4-2	
	Add New Entry	See P.4-4	
	Play Messages	See P.2-10	
	Call VM	See P.12-4	
	My Details	See P.4-19	
Camera	Speed Dial	See P.4-13	
	—	See P.6-2	
Convenient Tool	Calendar	See P.11-2	
	Alarms	See P.11-11	
	Calculator	See P.11-14	
	Assignment	Wallpaper	See P.9-3
		Assign Tone	See P.9-12
		Volume	See P.9-12
	Answer Phone	See P.2-9	
Simple Menu	See P.2-21		
Data Folder	Pictures	See P.8-2	
	DCIM	See P.8-2	
	My Pictograms	See P.8-2	
	Ring Tones	See P.8-2	
	S! Appli	See P.15-2	
	Music	See P.8-2	
	Videos	See P.8-2	
	Lifestyle-appli	See P.16-3	

Data Folder	Books	See P.8-2
	Custom Screens	See P.9-6
	Flash [®]	See P.8-2
	Flash [®] Ringtones	See P.8-2
	Other Docs.	See P.8-2
	Memory Status	See P.8-2

Key Assignments

In Standby:

 (Long Press)	Switch to Standard Menu	See P.2-21
 (Long Press)	Turn handset on/off	See P.1-20
	Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	See P.14-2
	Open Messaging menu	See P.13-2
 (Long Press)	Open S! Mail Composition window	See P.13-7
	Open Call Log (All Calls)	See P.2-13
	Open Call Log (Dialled No.)	See P.2-4
	Open Call Log (Received Calls)	See P.2-8
	Open Phone Book	See P.4-8
 (Long Press)	Create new Phone Book Entry	See P.4-4
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Manner mode	See P.2-18
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Keypad Lock	See P.1-21
	Play Answer Phone messages	See P.2-10
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Answer Phone	See P.2-9

- While Simple Menu is active, shortcuts and some Quick Operations (see P.1-24) are disabled.

Text Entry

Character Selection

Use Kana and Pager (see **P.3-8**) to enter alphanumerics, Symbols, hiragana, kanji, katakana and Pictograms. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described for use in text entry windows using Kana Mode.



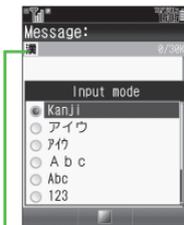
Entry Modes

Follow these steps to change character entry mode.

1 Press [Options]

2 Use [Up/Down] to select a mode and press [Enter]

- For **Pictogram** or **Symbols**, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)



Current Entry Mode

- Available Modes:

漢	Kanji (hiragana)	A	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
ア	Double-byte katakana	a	Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
ア	Single-byte katakana	1	Single-byte number
A	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)	区	Character Code
a	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)		

A and A appear in upper/lower case mode (see below).

Upper & Lower Case

- In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press [Shift] to toggle between upper/lower case and lower case modes.

- Tip** ▶
- Handset Character Codes correspond to 6,355 kanji.
 - Some characters are not available for mail addresses, etc.

Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

Example: In katakana entry, press  three times for ウ.

When entering characters, press  to toggle options in reverse. (Not available for single-byte numbers or Character Codes.)

Example: Enter 1, then press  to return to あ.

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@ . / _ - 1 □ (Space)	1	1
	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
	たちつとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8	8
	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
	わをんー	ワワンー	0	0 + ¹	0
	° ° Log List, Pictogram List, Symbol List	° ° ° ² Log List, Pictogram List, Symbol List ³ (Symbol List → Log List → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	Log List, Pictogram List, Symbol List ³ (Symbol List → Log List → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	* P (Pause) ? - ⁴ Symbol List, Log List, Pictogram List	_____
	、。 # (Line Break) ? ! □ (Space)		.. # (Line Break) ?! □ (Space)	#	_____

¹ Press  for 1+ seconds to enter + (available for phone number entry).

² - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

³ Double or single-byte according to the entry mode.

⁴ *, P (Pause), ? and - are for phone number entry.

Key Assignments (Continued)

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion (Up) ⁵	Cursor Up			
	Conversion (Down) ⁶	Cursor Down ↓ (Line Break)			
	Cursor Left				
	Cursor Right				
	Change Entry Mode				
	Toggle Case (for some characters)	Toggle Case + Toggle Mode (upper/lower and lower case)		_____	_____
 Press	Delete One Character, Cancel Conversion	Delete One Character			Delete Code/ One Character
 Long Press	Delete before or after cursor				
	Recover up to 64 deleted characters ⁷				
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion	_____			_____
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics Conversion	_____			_____

⁵Cursor moves up except during conversion.

⁶Cursor moves down except during conversion.

⁷Press  once for each character to recover immediately after deletion. (Not available for Arrange Mail or after using  (Long Press).)

Entering Characters

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Following the example below, enter **鈴木** to learn how to enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

1 Press **3** three times

Word suggestions change as hiragana are entered.



2 Press **3** for 1+ seconds

- When the next character is on the same key, press the key for 1+ seconds. Cursor moves to the right and the first character assigned to that key is entered.



3 Press **3** twice and press **Enter**



4 Press **2** twice

- To enter unconverted hiragana, skip ahead to Step 6.



5 Press **Down Arrow** (convert) and use **Left Arrow** to select a word

- The most recent selection appears first in the list.

■ To see other suggestions, press **Envelope**

■ **Prev.** or **Next**

■ To exit the list, press **Enter**.

■ To change segment, see P.3-6 "Segmenting Phrases".



6 Press **Enter**



Katakana Entry

- Switch to double or single-byte katakana mode to enter katakana. (Press **Confirm** after entry.) Alternatively, enter hiragana and then select katakana from the word suggestion list.
- To convert hiragana to katakana/alphanumerics only, see P.3-10 "Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion".

Predictive & Previous Usage

- Use these functions to convert hiragana to kanji more quickly.

Predictive	Word suggestions change as up to five hiragana are entered
Previous Usage	Suggests words/characters likely to follow entry based on previous entries

- Both functions are active by default (see P.3-12 "Optional Predictive Functions").
- To lower priority of particular types of words (names of people, places, etc.) in the word suggestion list, see P.3-12 "Set Low Priority".

User Dictionary

- Save frequently used words/phrases to select from the word suggestion list. In text entry windows, save entered words/phrases from Options. For details, see P.9-17.

Segmenting Phrases

If the word is not listed, press after Step 5 on P.3-5 to exit. Use to segment hiragana to convert separately.

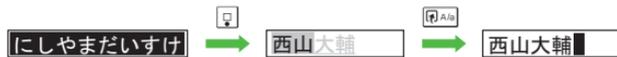
Example: Segment みち into み and ち.



Selecting Multiple Converted Words

Press .

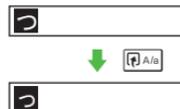
Example: To enter 西山大輔



Small Kana (っ, っ, etc.)

Enter small hiragana あ, い, う, え, お, っ, や, ゅ and よ as well as small katakana.

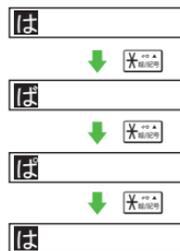
1 Enter a character and press



Adding ° or °

1 Enter a character and press

- In kanji (hiragana)/double-byte katakana entry, press the key once to add ° to か (Ka) row, さ (Sa) row and た (Ta) row characters, and press twice to remove. For は (Ha) row characters, press once to add °, twice to add ° and three times to remove.



Tip ▶ In Single-byte Katakana Entry

- Press once to add single-byte ° or twice for °.
- Press to remove ° or °.

Space

1 Press

Alternatively, in kanji (hiragana), katakana or alphanumeric entry, press six times for space.



Line Break

Insert line breaks in text, Text Templates, etc.

1 Press at the end of text

- To insert line breaks in text, press  until  appears, then press .

Contact me at 



Contact me at 
|

Entering Alphanumerics

Enter alphanumerics in double or single-byte alphanumerics mode. Alternatively, enter numbers in single-byte number mode.



- When the next character is on the same key (example: entering **a** then **b**), press  first to move cursor.
 - Alternatively, press the character key for 1+ seconds (see Step 2 on P.3-5).
- In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press  to toggle between upper/lower and lower case modes.
- To convert hiragana to katakana/alphanumerics only, see P.3-10 "Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion".

Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons

Symbols & Pictograms

Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

1 Press to open Log List (Log List is available in some entry modes; see P.3-3)

Recently used Symbols/Pictograms appear.

- appears by default or when Log List is deleted.
- To see Symbols, press ; toggle as follows: Symbol List(s) → Log List.
- To see Pictograms, press ; toggles as follows: Pictogram Lists → Log List.
 - Alternatively, press  repeatedly to scroll through Symbols or Pictograms.

2 Use to select one and press

- Repeat Step 2 to enter more.

3 Press a key (-) to exit list and enter the assigned character

- Alternatively, press  to exit list.

- Tip** ▶
- Double-byte Symbols appear only in double-byte entry mode. (All Pictograms are double-byte.)
 - Single-byte Symbols do not appear in Log List.
 - Alternatively, enter  and press  (convert). Some Symbols can be selected.
 - For available Pictograms, see P.19-16. While creating Arrange Mail (see P.13-12), My Pictograms (see P.8-2) downloaded via the Internet can also be used.
 - Enter a descriptive word such as  or  and press  (convert). Corresponding Pictograms can be selected.
 - While creating S! Mail (see P.13-8) or Arrange Mail (see P.13-12), Log of My Pictograms (see P.8-2) is available.

Deleting Log List

- In a text entry window, press **Options** ➔ Select *Input/Conversion* ➔ Press ➔ Select *Clear Symbols* ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
 - To return to the text entry window, press ➔ Press

Emoticons

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select *Emoticons* and press
 - Enter two digits (01 - 50) to jump to the emoticon assigned to the number.
- 3 Select an emoticon and press

Tip ▶

 - For other emoticons, enter *かお* and press (convert). Alternatively, enter a descriptive word such as *わーい* or *うーん* and press (convert). Corresponding emoticons can be selected.
 - Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as *嬉しい* or *悲しい*, corresponding emoticons may appear in the word suggestion list. To disable this function, see P.3-12 "Optional Predictive Functions" (Pre-used Emoticon).

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter *.co.jp*, *http://*, etc., easily.

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select *Quick Address List* and press

- 3 Select an extension and press
 - Mail addresses and URLs are single-byte.

Character Code

- 1 In **Character Code** entry mode, enter four digits (see P.19-10)

Pager Code

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select *Input/Conversion* and press
- 3 Select *Input Method* and press
- 4 Select *Pager Code* and press

Pager Code _ _ appears at the bottom.

 - To switch to Kana Mode, select *Kana* ➔ Press
- 5 Enter two digits (see P.3-9)
 - Pager Mode is active until switched to Kana Mode.

Character Entry Modes

- In Pager Mode, toggle between entry modes as follows:
 - Press ➔ Select **P**, **P**, *Pictogram*, *Symbols* or *Character Code* ➔ Press
 - For *Pictogram* or *Symbols*, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)
 - To toggle between upper and lower case modes, press ➔ Press **P/p**

- Tip** ▶
- Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion is disabled in Pager Mode.
 - To enter ` or ` , see Pager Code List on P.3-9.

■ Pager Code List

- Blanks indicate no entry.
- Grey background indicates upper and lower case available. Press **[F AB]** to switch immediately after character entry.

Double-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		☎	*1
	8	や	(ゆ)	よ	✕	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0

Double-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	ゞ					

*1 Press **[7-8] [0 F AB]** to insert line breaks (in mail message text, Text Templates, etc.).

*2 Press **[8-9] [0 F AB]** to toggle between upper and lower case modes.

- ♥ and ☎ are double-byte.

Single-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&		☎	*1
	8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	✕	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0

Single-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	ゞ					

Conversion Methods (Japanese Only)

Phonetic Conversion

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji.

- 1 Enter reading in hiragana
- 2 Press  Kanji
- 3 Select a kanji and press 



One-Hiragana Conversion

Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: To enter 鈴木



Up to 20 word selections are saved per hiragana. When memory is full, the oldest entry is deleted to make room for a new entry.

Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

- 1 Enter hiragana and press  kana
 - To enter AM, press  , then  kana.
- 2 Use  to select a word and press 
 - Hiragana to Roman Letter Conversion (hiragana with ^ˆ or [˚] is converted to the same characters/Symbols):

あ	@	い	.	う	/	え	_	お	Space
か	A	き	B	<	C	け	Space	こ	Space
さ	D	し	E	す	F	せ	Space	そ	Space
た	G	ち	H	つ	I	て	Space	と	Space
な	J	に	K	ぬ	L	ね	Space	の	Space
は	M	ひ	N	ふ	O	へ	Space	ほ	Space
ま	P	み	Q	む	R	め	S	も	Space
や	T	ゆ	U	よ	V	—	—	—	—
ら	W	り	X	る	Y	れ	Z	ろ	Space
わ	,	を	.	ん	Space	— (Long Sound)		Space	

- Hiragana to Number Conversion (hiragana with ^ˆ or [˚] is converted to the same numbers):
 - あ (A) row...1 ■ か (Ka) row...2 ■ さ (Sa) row...3 ■ た (Ta) row...4
 - な (Na) row...5 ■ は (Ha) row...6 ■ ま (Ma) row...7 ■ や (Ya) row...8
 - ら (Ra) row...9 ■ わをんー (Long Sound)...0

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

Quick Conversion helps reduce keystrokes needed to enter frequently used words.

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter 微妙

Normal Conversion	6 ^ひ 6 ^み 7 ^び 7 ^み (あ)
	8 ^ひ 8 ^み 8 ^ひ 8 ^み (よ)
	1 ^あ 1 ^あ 1 ^あ (う) (convert)
Quick Conversion	6 ^あ 7 ^あ (ま) 8 ^あ (や) 1 ^あ (あ)
	1 ^あ (convert)

1 Enter hiragana and press

Cursor turns green.

- While cursor is green, use  to segment entered hiragana and then convert one segment at a time.

 To cancel Quick Conversion, press  ➔ Press  for normal conversion

2 Use to select a word and press

Note ▶ Use Quick Conversion in kanji (hiragana) mode only.

Tip ▶ The most recent selection (mostly nouns) appears first.

One Hiragana Predictive Entry

Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Words starting with a hiragana in the same row (あいうえお for あ) appear. Word suggestions vary by time of day.

Example: When あ is entered

5:00 - 10:59	11:00 - 16:59	17:00 - 22:59	23:00 - 4:59
朝一番 朝帰り 行ってきます いってらっしゃい :	あちい～ 後でね いただきま～す♪ 移動中 :	遊ぼう 明日 急いで行くよ 今どこ? :	アウチ!! ありがとう いえーい!!! 行こうね :

- Words in the list are preset by time blocks.
- If Clock is unset, only words for 11:00 - 16:59 are available.

One Hiragana Word Call

Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for. The most recent selection appears first.

Example: You entered あたあざわ and selected お父さん last time.



Conversion Settings

Optional Predictive Functions Activate or cancel Predictive, Previous Usage or Pre-used Emoticon

Press **Options** Default On (all) ➔ **Select Input/Conversion** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Predictive, Previous Usage or Pre-used Emoticon** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔ Press

Set Low Priority Select types of words to lower their priorities in the word suggestion list

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Input/Conversion** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Set Low Priority** ➔ Press ➔ **Select an item** ➔ Press ➔ Press **OK**

- To select multiple items, select and press for each item before pressing **OK**.

Reset Learning Clear log of words selected in kanji conversion, Predictive, etc.

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Input/Conversion** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Reset Learning** ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ Press

- Words saved in User Dictionary remain.

Editing Characters

Deleting & Replacing

1 Use to select a character and press

- The highlighted character is deleted.
- Place cursor at the end of text and press for 1+ seconds to delete all text. When cursor is located amidst a block of text, characters on and after cursor are deleted.



2 Enter another character

Copy/Cut & Paste

When **Options** appears, copy or cut and paste text into the same window or another. (My Pictograms, etc. copied from Arrange Mail Composition window may not be pasted.)

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Copy** or **Cut** and press

3 Use to select the first character of text and press

Start point is set.

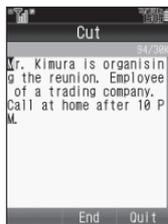
 To change the start point, press 
 **Quit**.

4 Select the end point and press

5 Open text paste target window

6 Press **Options**

7 Select *Paste* and press



Cut



Deleting Text On and After Cursor

1 Select the first character of text

2 Press **Options**

3 Select *Cursor Position* and press

4 Select *Delete Posterior* and press

Jump to Top or End

 In a text entry window, press  **Options**  Select *Cursor Position*  Press   Select *Jump to End or Jump to Top*  Press 

Additional Functions

Copying from Phone Book

Insert Phone Book entry items into text entry windows.

Select from name, phone numbers, mail addresses,

Category, postal address, homepage, Note, and Birthday.

1 Press **Options**

- Move cursor to target location beforehand.

2 Select *Advanced* and press

3 Select *Phone Book* and press

4 Open a Phone Book entry or *My Details*

5 Use to select an item and press



Using Text Templates

Insert text saved in Text Templates (see P.11-26) into text entry windows.

- 1 Press  **Options**
- 2 Select *Text Templates* and press 
- 3 Select *Call Templates* and press 
- 4 Select text and press 

Text is inserted.

Saving to Text Templates

- Follow these steps to save text in text entry windows to Text Templates.

Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Text Templates* ➔ Press  ➔ Select *Save Templates* ➔ Press  ➔ Select the first character of text ➔ Press  ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press 

- Enter up to 1,536 characters.
- Not available while creating Arrange Mail.

Changing Font Size

- 1 Press  **Options**
- 2 Select *Advanced* and press 
- 3 Select *Font Size* and press 
- 4 Select a size and press 

Tip ► Setting applies to *Editor* Font Size in Display Font Settings (see P.9-4).

Phone Book

Overview

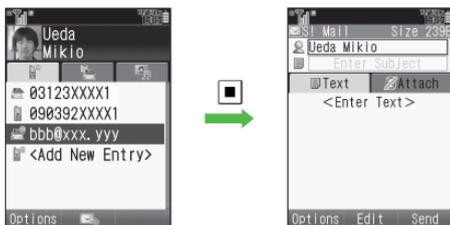
Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book.

- Entry names appear for calls from numbers saved in Phone Book.
- Set ringtone/ringvideo by caller/sender, sort entries into Categories, etc. See **P.4-3** for more about Phone Book entry items.

■ Dialling from Phone Book



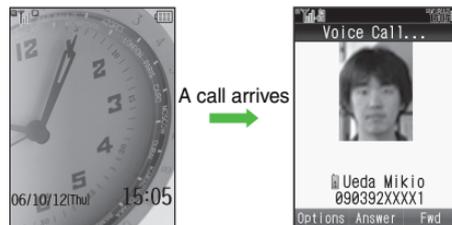
■ Sending SMS/S! Mail messages from Phone Book



Note ▶ Back-up Important Information

When battery is exhausted/removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost; handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered data.

■ When a Call Arrives



- ### Service Dial
- Dial service dial numbers saved on compatible USIM Cards to use services.

Press **▶ Select Phone** **▶ Press** **▶ Select Service Dial No.** **▶ Press** **▶ Select service** **▶ Press**

- For details, contact the service providers.

Tip ▶ Use Phone Book Lock (see **P.9-23**) to protect entries from accidental alteration and to restrict access to Phone Book information.

Saving to Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

Save up to 750 entries in handset Phone Book; USIM Card Phone Book entry limit varies according to card specifications.

Item	Description	Item	Description
Last Name:	Enter up to 32 characters. (Select Name: when saving to USIM Card.)	Homepage: ¹	Save URLs. Enter up to 1,024 bytes.
First Name:		Note: ¹	Add personal details. Enter up to 256 characters.
Reading:	Enter up to 64 characters.	Birthday: ¹	Enter birth date
Add Phone Number:	Enter up to three numbers on handset/two on USIM Card (32 digits each)	Picture: ^{1, 2}	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/mail
Add Email Address:	Enter up to three addresses on handset/one on USIM Card (128 single-byte alphanumeric each)	Tone/Video for Voice Call: ¹	Set ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light or Vibration by caller/sender
Category:	Sort entries into 16 Categories (11 on some USIM Cards). Category names can be changed. Set ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light and Vibration by Category (handset only).	Tone/Video for Video Call: ¹	
		Tone/Video for New Message: ¹	
		Light for Voice Call: ¹	
		Light for Video Call: ¹	
Address: ¹	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters) and street name/number (64 characters)	Light for New Message: ¹	
		Vibration for Incoming Call: ¹	
		Vibration for New Message: ¹	
		Secret: ¹	Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries

¹Not supported on USIM Card.

²Image may not appear while an S! Application is active, etc.

Note ▶ Depending on the USIM Card in use, some items may not be supported, and character entry limits or number of Categories may be lower. Also, the number of phone numbers or mail addresses per entry may be lower.

Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, reading, phone number and mail address.
For other items, see **P.4-5 - 4-7**.

Storage media is set to handset (**Phone**) by default.

Main Menu ▶ Phone

1 Select **Add New Entry** and press **■**

Phone Book Details appears.

- If storage media confirmation appears, select **To Phone** or **To USIM**
▶ Press **■**

2 Select **Last Name:** and press **■**

3 Enter last name and press **■**

4 Select **First Name:** and press **■**

5 Enter first name and press **■**

Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

- To correct reading, see **P.4-7**.

6 Select **Add Phone Number:** and press **■**

7 Enter a phone number and press **■**

- Include dialling code for landline numbers.

8 Select an icon and press **■**

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat Steps 6 - 8.



Phone Book Details

9 Select **Add Email Address:** and press **■**

10 Enter a mail address and press **■**

11 Press **■**

12 Select an icon and press **■**

- To save additional mail addresses, repeat Steps 9 - 12.

13 Press **Y** **Save**

Note ▶ To save an entry, enter at least one of the following: a) last name; b) first name; c) phone number; or d) mail address.

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved.

Storage Media

- Follow these steps to set default storage media for new entries.

Press **■** ▶ Select **Phone** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Ph.Book Settings** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Save New Entry** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Phone, USIM Memory or Ask Each Time** ▶ Press **■**

- **Phone** is set by default.
- For **Ask Each Time**, select storage media for each new entry.

Confirmation for Unsaved Numbers

- Follow these steps to show/hide confirmation for saving to Phone Book after calls with unsaved numbers.
Press **⇒ Select Phone** **⇒ Press** **⇒ Select Ph.Book Settings** **⇒ Press** **⇒ Select New Number Prompt** **⇒ Press** **⇒ Select Incoming Call or Outgoing Call** **⇒ Press** **⇒ Choose On or Off** **⇒ Press**
- Both are *On* by default.

Personal Ringtone/Ringvideo

Select ringtones or ringvideos for calls/mail from numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book.

- Select from preset patterns or use the following melody or video files in Data Folder.
 - Files in Ring Songs-Tones, Music or Flash®Ringtones folder (file name: 55 characters or less including extension)
 - Files in Videos folder (file name: 55 characters or less including extension)
- Save files to Data Folder (Videos) before assigning video.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

- 1** **Select *Tone/Video for Voice Call*; *Tone/Video for Video Call*; or *Tone/Video for New Message*: and press**

2 Ringtone

- 1** **Select *Assign Tone* and press**
 - To cancel assigned tone, select *Remove Tone/Video* **⇒ Press** **⇒ Choose *Yes*** **⇒ Press**
- 2** **Select *Preset Sounds, Ring Songs-Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtone* and press**

Ringvideo

- 1** **Select *Video* and press**
 - To cancel assigned video, select *Remove Tone/Video* **⇒ Press** **⇒ Choose *Yes*** **⇒ Press**

3 Select a file and press

- For *Preset Sounds*, select a tone **⇒ Press**

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail

- **After Step 3, select *Tone/Video for New Message*: **⇒ Press** **⇒ Select *Duration*** **⇒ Press** **⇒ Enter time** **⇒ Press****

- Note** **▶**
- When source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved to another folder/Memory Card, tone/video set in Sounds & Alerts (see P.9-12 "Ringtone/videos") applies. (Similarly, if source file is copy protected and licence expires.)
 - To apply settings to Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data.

Personal Light/Vibration

Set Small Light illumination or handset vibration for calls/mail from numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book.

Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns.

Complete other fields.

- 1** Select *Light for Voice Call*., *Light for Video Call*., *Light for New Message*., *Vibration for Incoming Call*.: or *Vibration for New Message*: and press 
- 2** Select *Switch On/Off* and press 
- 3** Select *On*, *Link to Sound* or *Off* and press 
 - *Link to Sound*: Handset vibrates only when ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.
- 4** Select *Light Colour* or *Vibration Pattern* and press 
- 5** Select a colour/pattern and press 

Personal Picture

Save an image to each Phone Book entry; saved image appears for calls/mail from phone numbers/mail addresses saved in that entry.

Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns.

Complete other fields.

- 1** Select *Picture*: and press 
 -  To cancel saved image, select *Remove Picture* → Press 
 - Choose *Yes* → Press 
- 2** *Selecting from Data Folder*
 - 1** Select *Assign Picture* and press 
 - 2** Select an image and press 

Capturing New Image

 - 1** Select *Take Picture* and press 
 - 2** Frame image on Display and press 

Captured image appears.

 - 3** Press 

- Note** ▶
- Setting is cancelled when source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved.
 - To apply settings to Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data.
 - Images may not appear for incoming calls while messaging with an S! Application paused.

Saving Secret Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns.

Complete other fields.

1 Select **Secret:** and press

2 Choose **On** and press

Unlock Temporarily

■ For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.

Press **Options** → Select **Unlock Temporarily** →

Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

- Secret entries are hidden next time Phone Book is opened.

- Note** ▶
- Activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-24) to open Secret entries.
 - To cancel Secret, activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-24) and choose **Off** in Step 2. To edit Phone Book entries, see P.4-10 "Editing Phone Book Entries".

Other Phone Book Entry Items

- For descriptions of each item, see P.4-3.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (see P.4-4). When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

Reading	Select Reading: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter reading → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Category	Select Category: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a Category → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Address	Select Address: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Postal Code: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter postal code → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Country: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter name → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select State/Province: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter name → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select City: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter name → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Street & Number: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter street name/number → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> OK
Homepage	Select Homepage: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter URL → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Note	Select Note: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter text → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Birthday	Select Birthday: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter date → Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Saving from Call Log

- 1 Use  to open Dialed Numbers/Received Calls
- 2 Use  to select a record and press  **Options**
- 3 Select **Save Number** and press 
- 4 **New Entry**

1 Select As New Entry and press

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see P.4-4) appears. Complete other fields.

Add to Existing Entry

1 Select a Phone Book entry and press

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see P.4-4) appears. Complete other fields.

Note ► **Withheld** records cannot be saved. New numbers cannot be saved to handset Phone Book entries with three phone numbers or USIM Card entries with two phone numbers.

Phone Book Memory Status

Main Menu ► *Phone* ► *Manage Entries*

1 Select **Memory Status** and press

Numbers of entries on handset and USIM Card appear.

Press  to exit.

Using Phone Book

Dialling from Phone Book

Search Phone Book by katakana row (default search method) to call numbers within entries.

- To dial numbers saved in Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-24).
- To search by other methods, see P.4-9.

1 Press

2 Use to specify katakana row

- Alternatively, enter Reading to search Phone Book.



3 Use to select an entry and press

Phone Book entry opens.

(Window Description: see P.4-9)

For entries with multiple numbers, use  to select one.



4 Press

Handset dials the number.

To place Video Calls, press  ► Select **Video Call** ► Press 

Switching Between Handset & USIM Card

- Press ➔ Press ➔ **Options** ➔ Select *Ph.Book Settings*
- ➔ Press ➔ Select *Select Phone Book* ➔ Press ➔
- Select *Phone, USIM Memory or Both* ➔ Press
- *Phone* is set by default.
- For *Both*, entries in both storage media appear.

Phone Book Search Methods

By Reading	Shows entries that start with specified Reading
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row

By *a-ka-sa-ta-na* is set by default.

Main Menu ➔ *Phone* ➔ *Ph.Book Settings* ➔ *Sort Entries*

1 Select By Reading, By Category or By a-ka-sa-ta-na and press

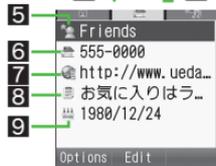
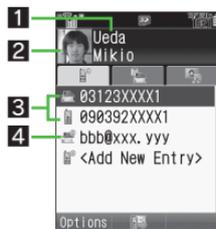
- Dialling Methods:

By Reading	Enter Reading ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press ➔ Press
By Category	Select a Category ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press ➔ Press
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Use to specify a row ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press ➔ Press

For entries with multiple numbers, select one and press .

Tip ➔ In Standby, press and follow the steps above.

Window Description



- 1 Name
- 2 Image Set for Picture
- 3 Phone Number
- 4 Mail Address
- 5 Category Name
- 6 Address
- 7 Homepage
- 8 Note
- 9 Birthday
- 10 Name of Image Set for Picture
- 11 Ringtone/Ringvideo Settings
- 12 Small Light Settings
- 13 Vibration Settings
- 14 Secret Status

Tip ➔ To see details or use saved information, select an item and press . To add information, select an item in angle brackets (<Add New Entry>, etc.) and press .

Editing Phone Book Entries

To edit Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-24).

Correction/Change

- 1** Press , then select an entry
- 2** Press  **Options**
- 3** Select **Edit** and press 
- 4** Select an item and press 
 - Edit contents.
 - See procedure for saving items to Phone Book (see P.4-4 - 4-7).
 - Edit Reading after editing names.
- 5** Press  when finished
 - To edit other items, repeat Steps 4 - 5.
 -  To cancel, press  \Rightarrow Choose **Yes** \Rightarrow Press 
- 6** Press  **Save**
 - The entry is overwritten.

Copying Phone Book Entries

Exchange entries between handset and USIM Card. USIM Card does not support some Phone Book entry items (see P.4-3). Those items are deleted when Phone Book entries are copied from handset.

One Entry

- 1** Press , then select an entry
- 2** Press  **Options**
- 3** Select **Manage Entries** and press 
- 4** **Handset to USIM Card**
 - 1** Select **Copy Entry to USIM** and press 
 - 2** Choose **Yes** and press 
- USIM Card to Handset**
 - 1** Select **Copy Entry to Phone** and press 

All Entries

If handset or USIM Card memory is low, entries cannot be copied all at once.

Main Menu \triangleright *Phone* \triangleright *Manage Entries* \triangleright *Copy All*

- 1** Select **USIM to Phone** or **Phone to USIM** and press 
- 2** Choose **Yes** and press 

Deleting Phone Book Entries

One Entry

- 1 Press , then select an entry
- 2 Press  **Options**
- 3 Select **Delete** and press 
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press 

Tip ► The source files remain in Data Folder, even when deleting entries containing melodies, video or images set for incoming calls/mail or Picture.

All Entries

Main Menu ► *Phone* ► *Manage Entries* ► *Delete All*

- 1 Select **Phone Entries**, **USIM Entries** or **Both Entries** and press 
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press 
- 3 Enter Handset Code and press 

Category Settings

Customise Category options; create new Category names.

Changing Category Name

Main Menu ► *Phone* ► *Category Control*

- 1 Use  to select handset or USIM
- 2 Select a Category and press  **Options**
 - **No Category** (on handset) cannot be renamed.
- 3 Select **Edit Name** and press 
 - To change icons, select **Change Icon** ► Press  ► Select an icon ► Press  (Omit the next steps.)
- 4 Enter name
 - Enter up to 16 characters on handset; USIM Card character entry limit varies according to card specifications.
- 5 Press 
 - Repeat Steps 1 - 5 for other Categories.

Customising Handset Responses

Set ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light or Vibration for incoming calls/mail by Category.

Category settings for incoming calls/mail are not available for Categories on USIM Card.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Category Control

- 1** Use  to select handset
- 2** Select a Category and press  **Options**
- 3** Select **Assign Ringtone, Assign Event Light or Assign Vibration** and press 
- 4** Select **For Voice Call, For Video Call or For New Message** and press 
 - See the corresponding procedure for each setting.
 - Ringtone/ringvideo: perform from Step 2 in "Personal Ringtone/Ringvideo" on **P.4-5**
 - Small Light/Vibration: perform from Step 2 in "Personal Light/Vibration" on **P.4-6**

Note ▶ Personal ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light and Vibration settings (see **P.4-5 - 4-6**) take priority.

Contact Groups

Create Contact Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time (see "Contact Groups" in Step 4 on **P.13-8**).

Creating Contact Groups

Create up to five Contact Groups.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Contact Groups ▶ Add New Group

- 1** Enter a Group name and press 

Saving Group Members

Save up to 20 members per Group.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Contact Groups

- 1** Select a Group and press 
- 2** Select **Assign New Entry** and press 
- 3** Select an entry and press 
 - ▶ For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use  to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ▶ Press 
 - To add other numbers/mail addresses, repeat Steps 2 - 3.

Editing Contact Groups

Renaming Groups

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Contact Groups

- 1** Select a Group and press  **Options**

2 Select *Edit Name* and press **■**

3 Enter name and press **■**

- Enter up to 16 characters.

4 Choose *Yes* and press **■**

Deleting Groups

Main Menu ▶ *Phone* ▶ *Contact Groups*

1 Select a Group and press **☒** **Options**

2 Select *Delete* and press **■**

3 Choose *Yes* and press **■**

4 Enter Handset Code and press **■**

Editing Group Members

Changing Members

Main Menu ▶ *Phone* ▶ *Contact Groups* ▶ *Open a Group*

1 Select a member and press **☒** **Options**

2 Select *Re-assign Entry* and press **■**

3 Select an entry and press **■**

- For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use **⏴** to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ▶ Press **■**

4 Choose *Yes* and press **■**

Deleting Members

Main Menu ▶ *Phone* ▶ *Contact Groups* ▶ *Open a Group*

1 Select a member and press **☒** **Options**

2 Select *Remove Entry* and press **■**

3 Choose *Yes* and press **■**

Tip ▶ Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.

Speed Dial List

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial List for easy dialling.

Main Menu ▶ *Phone* ▶ *Speed Dial List*

1 Select from **1** to **9** and press **■**

2 Select an entry and press **■**

- For entries with multiple numbers, use **⏴** to select one ▶ Press **■**
- To overwrite existing number, choose *Yes* ▶ Press **■** after Step 2

Saving from Phone Book

- Open a Phone Book entry and select a phone number → Press  **Options** → Select **Add Speed Dial** → Press  → Select from **1** to **9** → Press 
 - To overwrite existing number, choose **Yes** → Press  after Step 2

- Note** ►
- Saved numbers are deleted from Speed Dial List when edited in Phone Book or when source entry is deleted.
 - Numbers are editable even if source is a Secret entry.

- Tip** ► Use Headphones with Call Button to call the number saved in Speed Dial **1**.

Speed Dial

To dial numbers saved in Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (see **P.9-24**).

1 Press a key (**1**  - **9** 

2 Press 

Handset dials the number. (Name appears if saved.)

- To place Video Calls, press  for 1+ seconds. (Speed Video Call)
- Alternatively, select a name from Speed Dial List and press .

Delete

Delete entries one at a time

Main Menu ► *Phone* ► *Speed Dial List*

Select an entry ► Press  **Options** ► Select **Delete** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 

- Tip** ► Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting Speed Dial entries.

Clear All

Return Speed Dial List to default setting

Main Menu ► *Phone* ► *Speed Dial List*

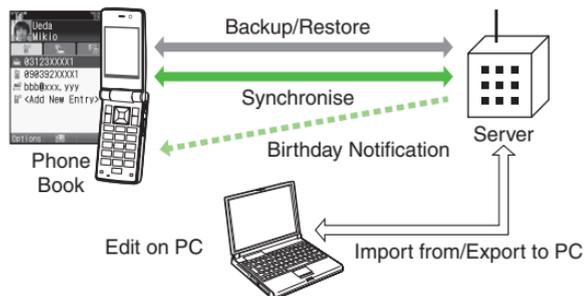
Press  **Options** ► Select **Clear All** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 

Using Headphones with Call Button

- In Standby, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in Speed Dial **1**.
 - To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.

SI Address Book (SAB)

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (see **P.4-16**).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online (<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/support/useful/sab/>).
- Save birthday information to SAB; use a PC to activate Birthday Notification online to receive SMS reminders.

Note ▶ Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronise) all incur transmission fees.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/Restore	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB ¹
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book ²
Synchronise	Normal	Synchronise Phone Book and SAB ³
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB ⁴
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book ⁵
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset

¹Any existing SAB content is deleted.

²Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

³If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

⁴Unrelated SAB changes remain.

⁵Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information or access My SoftBank via Yahoo! Keitai.



Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, User ID and Password arrive via SMS.
 • Handset phone number serves as User ID.



Save User ID & Password

See P.4-17 for procedures.



Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

- Using sync commands incurs transmission fees.

Tip ▶ If User ID and Password SMS does not arrive, dial 157 for Customer Service or follow these steps:

Press **▽** ⇒ Select **My SoftBank** ⇒ Press **■** ⇒

Select **利用状況の確認** ⇒ Press **■** ⇒ Select

S!7ドレズ' ッ編集用H' ス7ト' 確認 ⇒ Press **■**

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Precautions

■ Unsynchronisable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video (for Voice Call, Video Call, New Message), Light (for Voice Call, Video Call, New Message), Vibration (for Incoming Call, New Message)

■ Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting, **Normal, Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting **Normal, Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

■ Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronisation reflects lower limit.

■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**
SAB content remains as last saved.
- **Other 3G Handsets**
Service contract and SAB content remain (accessible via PC).
- **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**
Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

Availability

SAB is only accessible within Japan.

Saving User ID & Password

After completion of contract, User ID and Password arrive via SMS. Save them on handset to activate SAB.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ S! Address Book ▶ Sync Settings

- 1 Select **User Settings** and press
- 2 **User ID**
 - 1 Select **User ID** and press
 - 2 Enter handset number and press
- Password**
 - 1 Select **Password** and press
 - 2 Enter Password and press
- 3 Press **Save**

Backup & Restore

Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ S! Address Book

- 1 Select **Backup** and press
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press
- 3 Enter Handset Code and press
 - Handset connects to the Server and Backup starts.
 - After Backup, details appear.
 - To cancel, press **Cancel** → Choose **Yes** → Press
- 4 Press to exit

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ S! Address Book

- 1 Select **Restore** and press
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press
- 3 Enter Handset Code and press
 - Handset connects to the Server and Restore starts.
 - After Restore, details appear.
 - To cancel, press **Cancel** → Choose **Yes** → Press
- 4 Press to exit

Synchronising Phone Book

Manual Synchronisation

- For details, see the table on P.4-15.
- If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronisation is performed via **Normal** regardless of selection.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book

1 Select **Normal, Sync from Client or Sync from Server** and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

3 Enter Handset Code and press

Handset connects to the Server and Synchronisation starts.

- After Synchronisation, details appear.

To cancel, press **Cancel** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

4 Press to exit

Auto Synchronisation

- Save User ID and Password beforehand.
- Auto Sync Settings is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Sync Settings

1 Select **Auto Sync Settings** and press

2 Select **Set On/Off** and press

3 Choose **On** and press

4 Enter Handset Code and press

Set Frequency Select Auto Sync frequency

Default Every Sun 00:00

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Sync Settings ► Auto Sync Settings ► Set Frequency

Every Month

Select **Every Month** ► Press ► Enter date ► Press ► Enter time ► Press

Every Week

Select **Every Week** ► Press ► Select a day of the week ► Press ► Enter time ► Press

Every Day

Select **Every Day** ► Press ► Enter time ► Press

Set Sync Mode Select Auto Sync command

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Sync Settings ► Auto Sync Settings ► Set Sync Mode

Select a command ► Press

Opening Log

View result of Backup, Restore or Synchronisation.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ *S!* Address Book

1 Select *View Log* and press

Press  to exit.

My Details

Opening My Details

Confirm handset number (phone number on USIM Card).
Save name, reading, phone number, mail address, personal data, etc.

Main Menu ▶ Phone

1 Select *My Details* and press

- My Details are similar to Phone Book entries (see P.4-9).

2 Press to exit

Tip ▶ Exchange My Details via Bluetooth® (see P.10-2) or infrared (see P.10-10) with compatible devices.

**Edit/Add
Details**

Edit/add My Details

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ *My Details*

Press  **Options** ▶ Select *Edit/Add Details* ▶

Press  ▶ Select an item ▶ Press 

- For more, see P.4-4.

Note ▶ Phone number in *Tel 1*: cannot be changed.

Delete

Clear My Details

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ *My Details*

Press  **Options** ▶ Select *Reset My Details* ▶

Press  ▶ Choose *Yes* ▶ Press 

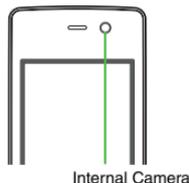
Note ▶ Phone number in *Tel 1*: remains.

Video Call

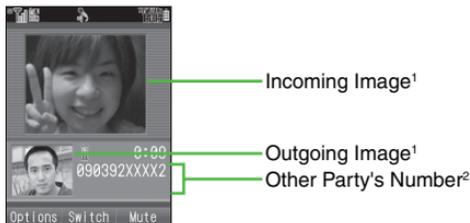
Getting Started

Communicate with another party using live video images.

- Use Video Call with compatible handsets only.
- Use Internal Camera to send your own image.
- Use External Camera to send higher quality images.



Window Description



¹Change incoming/outgoing image size/position (see **P.5-5** "Switch Images").

²Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Depending on the other party's handset specifications or settings, incoming image may appear small or not at all.
- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.
- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise. Use Headphones to reduce noise.
- Increasing Earpiece Volume for Loudspeaker (see **P.5-5, P.5-7**) use may cause feedback/interference. Moderate volume or use Headphones.
- Handset temperature may rise during Video Calls; this is normal.

Initiating a Video Call

1 Enter a phone number

2 Press  **Options**

3 Select **Video Call** and press 

When the call is answered, incoming image appears.

- Incoming image may not appear depending on handset settings. (Video Call charges apply.)

 For operations during a Video Call, see **P.5-4**.

4 Press  to end call

- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if Headphones or a Bluetooth® headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)

- Tip** ▶
- Enter a phone number (or select a record from Call Log) and press  for 1+ seconds to initiate a Video Call.
 - To initiate a Video Call from Phone Book, see **P.4-8**. To select a record from Call Log, see **P.2-13**.



Answering a Video Call

1 When a Video Call arrives, open handset

Incoming Video Call appears.



2 *Answer with Video Image*

1 Press  **Answer**

2 Select **Show Picture** and press 

Internal Camera image is sent.

-  For operations during a Video Call, see **P.5-4**.

Answer with Voice Only

1 Press  **Answer**

2 Select **Hide Picture** and press 

- Outgoing image is suppressed. (Video Call charges apply.)

 For operations during a Video Call, see **P.5-4**.

3 Press  to end call

- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if Headphones or a Bluetooth® headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)



Rejecting Video Calls

- When a Video Call arrives, press **Options** → Select **Reject** → Press .

Redirecting Video Calls

- When a Video Call arrives, press **Fwd**.

Placing Callers on Hold

- When a Video Call arrives, press or follow these steps.
 - Press **Options** → Select **Hold** → Press
 - To answer the call on hold, press → Select **Show Picture** or **Hide Picture** → Press
 - Callers placed on hold receive Hold Guidance Picture; microphone is muted.

Note ► Loudspeaker (see P.5-5, P.5-7) is temporarily cancelled when receiving Video Calls in Manner mode. To reactivate, set to **Loudspeaker On** during a call.

Engaged Video Call Operations

Camera Picture

Change outgoing image

Default Internal Camera

During a call, press .

- Image toggles as follows: External Camera image → Alternative Image → Internal Camera image.
- Press to toggle image in reverse order.
- To change Alternative Image during a call, press **Options** → Select **Settings** → Press → Perform from "Select **Alternative Image**" in "Camera Picture" on P.5-6

Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels)

Default Level 3

During a call, press or → Press (up) or (down) to adjust level

- Each press changes volume by one level.
- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.

Mute

Mute Microphone

During a call, press **Mute**.

- To cancel, press **Unmute**.

Switch Images

Change incoming/outgoing image size/position

During a call, press .

- Incoming Priority (incoming image appears larger) is set when initiating Video Calls.
- Images toggle as shown below.



Note ▶ Outgoing image appears on other party's handset even when Incoming Only is active.

Video Output

View Video Call images on an external device

■ Connect Video Cable to handset and device, and activate Video Output (see P.9-11).

During a call, press .

- Images appear on the device when initiating Video Calls.
- Press  to toggle display between the device and handset.
- Only incoming/outgoing image appears on the device. (Images do not appear on handset and device simultaneously.)
- To switch device Display Size, see P.9-11.

Note ▶

- Voice is audible from handset.
- Images may not appear on the device while menus and other windows are open.

Loudspeaker

Cancel or activate Loudspeaker

During a call, press  **Options** ▶ **Select Loudspeaker Off or Loudspeaker On** ▶ Press .

- Loudspeaker is temporarily cancelled when Manner mode is activated during calls.

Hold

Pause live voice/image transmissions
Send Hold Guidance Picture

During a call, press  **Options** ▶ **Select Hold** ▶ Press .

- To resume, press  **Retrive**.

Open Phone Book

Open/save Phone Book entries or My Details

Opening Phone Book

- During a call, press **Options** ➔ Select **Open Phone Book** ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry (or **My Details**) ➔ Press • **My Details** appears only when **Sort Entries** is set to **By Reading** or **By Category** (see P.4-9 "Phone Book Search Methods").

Saving Entries

- During a call, press **Options** ➔ Select **Open Phone Book** ➔ Press ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Add New Entry** ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4

Transfer Audio

Select sound output when a handsfree device, etc. is used for conversations

- During a call, press **Options** ➔ Select **Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Transfer Audio** ➔ Press ➔ Select **To Phone** or **To Bluetooth** ➔ Press

Mirror Image

Activate or cancel reversed Internal Camera image

- During a call, press **Options** ➔ Select **Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Mirror Image** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **On** or **Off** ➔ Press • External Camera image, Alternative Image and incoming images cannot be reversed. • Mirror Image is **On** when initiating Video Calls.

Exposure

Adjust outgoing image brightness (5 levels: -2 to +2)

- During a call, press **Options** ➔ Select **Settings** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Exposure** ➔ Press ➔ Use to adjust level ➔ Press • Alternative Image appearance is fixed. • Exposure is **Level 0** when initiating Video Calls.

Help

View a summary of key assignments

- During a call, press **Options** ➔ Select **Help** ➔ Press ➔ Press to return.

Other Engaged Call Operations

- **Mobile Light**
Press for 1+ seconds to turn on or off.
 - Use Mobile Light as a strobe for External Camera.
- **Digital Zoom**
Press (zoom in) or (zoom out).
 - Not available for Alternative Image.
- **Manner Mode**
Press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel.
- To change Incoming Picture, Outgoing Picture, Backlight or Hold Guidance Pict (see P.5-7) during a call, press **Options**, select **Settings** and press .

Video Call Settings

To change these settings (except Remote Monitor) during calls, see P.5-4 - 5-6.

Camera Picture

Outgoing image is either live video via Internal Camera or Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls

Internal Camera

Main Menu

▶ **Settings** ➔ **Call/Video Call** () ➔ **Video Call** ➔ **Camera Picture**

Select **Default Image** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Internal Camera** or **Alternative Image** ➔ Press

- To change Alternative Image, select **Alternative Image** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Preset Picture** or **My Pictures** ➔ Press ➔ Select an image ➔ Press ➔ Press
- To use Custom Screen image, select **Alternative Image** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Custom Screen** ➔ Press ➔ Press
- **Custom Screen** does not appear when Custom Screen (see P.9-6) is set to **Pattern 1**.
- External Camera image is selectable during a call.

Loudspeaker

Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Video Calls

Default On

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Loudspeaker

Choose On or Off ▶ Press

- Loudspeaker is temporarily cancelled when initiating Video Calls in Manner mode.

Incoming Picture

Select quality of incoming images

Default Normal

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Incoming Picture

Select Normal, Quality Prior or Frame Rate Prior ▶ Press

- Select **Quality Prior** for higher quality and **Frame Rate Prior** for faster frame rate.

Outgoing Picture

Select quality of outgoing images

Default Normal

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Outgoing Picture

Select Normal, Quality Prior or Frame Rate Prior ▶ Press

- Select **Quality Prior** for higher quality and **Frame Rate Prior** for faster frame rate.

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for Video Calls

Default Always On

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Backlight

Select Always On, Always Off or Normal Setting ▶ Press

- Selecting **Normal Setting** applies Display Backlight setting (see P.9-9).

Mute Microphone

Mute Microphone for Video Calls

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Mute Microphone

Choose On (mute) or Off ▶ Press **Hold Guidance Pic**

Select image that can be sent while calls are on hold

Default Picture 1

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Hold Guidance Pic

Preset Picture**Select Preset Picture** ▶ Press ▶ **Select an image** ▶ Press ▶ Press **Data Folder Images****Select My Pictures** ▶ Press ▶ **Select an image** ▶ Press ▶ Press **Custom Screens****Select Custom Screen** ▶ Press ▶ Press

- Custom Screen** does not appear when Custom Screen (see P.9-6) is set to **Pattern1**.

Remote Monitor

Automatically answer Video Calls from numbers saved in Auto Answer List

Default: Switch On/Off: Off, Answer Time: 00 seconds

Main Menu

Settings → Call/Video Call (☎) → Video Call → Remote Monitor → Enter Handset Code

Activating/Cancelling

Select **Switch On/Off** → Press **[M]** → Choose **On** (answer automatically) or **Off** → Press **[M]**

Adding to Auto Answer List

Select **Auto Answer List** → Press **[M]** → Select **<empty>** → Press **[M]** → Enter a number → Press **[M]**

To select from Phone Book or Call Log, select **Auto Answer List** → Press **[M]** → Select **<empty>** → Press **[Options]** → Select **Change** → Press **[M]** → Select **From Contacts List** or **From Call Log** → Press **[M]** → Select a number → Press **[M]**

To change entries, select **Auto Answer List** → Press **[M]** → Select an entry → Press **[M]** → Enter a number → Press **[M]**
 To select from Phone Book or Call Log, select **Auto Answer List** → Press **[M]** → Select an entry → Press **[Options]** → Select **Change** → Press **[M]** → Select **From Contacts List** or **From Call Log** → Press **[M]** → Select a number → Press **[M]**

To delete entries, select **Auto Answer List** → Press **[M]** → Select an entry → Press **[Options]** → Select **Delete** → Press **[M]** → Press **[M]**

- Save up to ten numbers.

Changing Ring Time

Select **Answer Time** → Press **[M]** → Enter time → Press **[M]**

Note

- Even if Remote Monitor is active, calls from non-Auto Answer List numbers are not answered.
- Remote Monitor is effective only when handset is open.
- For calls answered via Remote Monitor, a tone sounds from Speaker even if Manner mode is active/handsfree device is connected. (Tone and volume are fixed.)

Camera

Getting Started

810SH and 811SH feature a 2 megapixel CCD camera. Capture still images (see **P.6-5**) or record video (see **P.6-8**).

Tip ▶ Use Internal Camera (see **P.1-7 9**) or External Camera (see **P.1-7 26**); unless otherwise noted, mobile camera operations are described for External Camera.

Mobile Camera Basics

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover (see **P.1-7 26**) with a soft cloth before use.
- Handset movement may blur images; hold handset firmly or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer. (see **P.6-11**).
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's colour filter.

Shutter Click

- Shutter click volume is fixed, and sounds even in Manner mode.
- To change shutter click sound for still images, see **P.6-15**.

Incoming Calls/Alarm while Using Camera

- Before capturing image or recording video, mobile camera temporarily shuts down for incoming calls and Alarm. End the call or close Alarm Time notice to reactivate camera.
 - Press  during a call to toggle mobile camera and Call windows.
- When recording video, Alarm Times are announced after exiting mobile camera.
- Captured image/recorded video is temporarily saved. End the call or close Alarm Time notice to return.

Precautions for Video Recording

- When battery is low, Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low while recording video, recording stops. (Recorded video is saved.)

Auto Shut-off

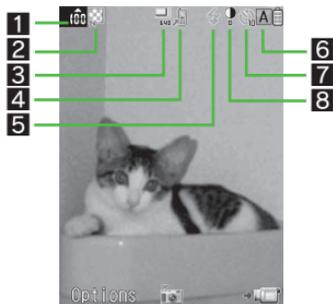
- Before image capture, mobile camera shuts down after three minutes of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Exporting Images

- View images and video on PCs, TVs or other display devices via the supplied Video Cable (see **P.9-10** "Viewing Images on External Devices").

Camera Display Indicators

Photo Camera Mode



1 Capacity (see P.6-5)

- : 101 or more
- Red background: 3 or less

2 Video Quality (see P.6-17)

- : High Quality, : Fine, : Normal

3 Picture Size (see P.6-16)

4 Save to (see P.6-18)

- : Handset, : Memory Card (Pictures),
: Memory Card (DCIM), : Ask Each Time

5 Mobile Light (see P.6-16)

- : On, : Automatic, : Low Light

6 Scene (see P.6-17)

- : Automatic, : Night, : Sports, : Characters

7 Self-timer Active (see P.6-11)

- : 10 seconds, : 5 seconds, : 2 seconds

Continuous Shoot (see P.6-12)

- - : Captured/Total

- : 4 Pictures, : 9 Pictures,

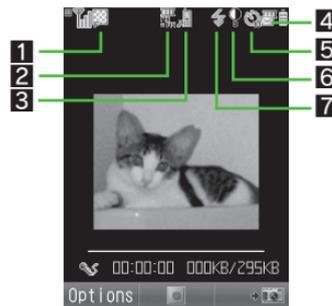
- When Self-timer and Continuous Shoot are both active indicators appear in turn.

- : Index Image (composite image for Overlapped) is on Display.

8 Exposure (see P.6-16)

-
- Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright

Video Camera Mode



1 Video Quality (see P.6-17)

- : High Quality, : Fine, : Normal

2 Record Size (see P.6-17)

3 Save to (see P.6-18)

- : Handset, : Memory Card, : Ask Each Time

4 Record Time (see P.6-17)

- : For Message, : Extended Video, : SD VIDEO

5 Self-timer (see P.6-11)

🕒: 10 seconds, 🕒: 5 seconds, 🕒: 2 seconds

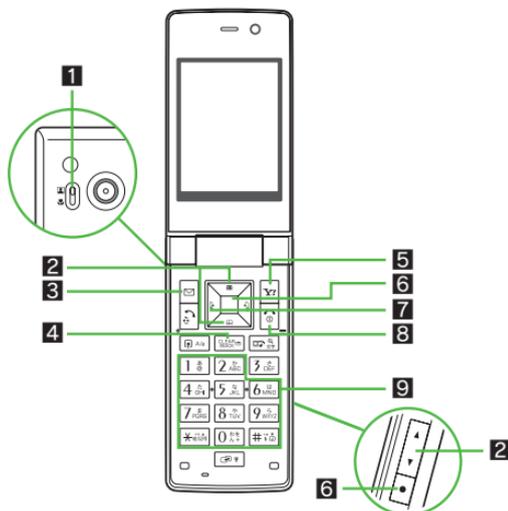
6 Exposure (see P.6-16)

Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright

7 Mobile Light (see P.6-16)

📶: On, 📶: Automatic

Key Assignments

**1 Portrait (👤)/Macro (📷) Selector**

Slide to Macro to capture images as close as 10 cm. Allow at least 40 cm for Portrait.

2 Digital Zoom

Press (zoom in) or (zoom out).

- Alternatively, use (zoom in) and (zoom out).

3 Options**4 Cancel****5 Toggle Mode****6 Shutter****7 Exposure**

(darker), (brighter)

8 End**9 Function Shortcuts**

Activate mobile camera and press the following keys to use the corresponding functions.

	Show Exposure slider
	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see P.6-15 "Show Indicator")
	Toggle Viewfinder size (see P.6-16 "Display Size")
	Switch save location (see P.6-18 "Save to")
	Change image size (see P.6-16 "Picture Size" or P.6-17 "Record Time/Size")
	Switch Scene options for image capture (see P.6-17)
	Turn Microphone on/off for video recording (see P.6-17)
	Change image quality (see P.6-17)
	Toggle Self-timer mode (see P.6-11)
	Maximise or cancel Digital Zoom
	Open Help (see P.6-5)
	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-18 "Internal Camera/External Camera")
	Toggle Mobile Light mode (see P.6-16)

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode. For details, see **P.6-7 "Still Image Functions"** and **P.6-9 "Video Recording Operations"**.

Help

■ Activate mobile camera and press **Options** to view a summary of key assignments.

■ Press **Down** to scroll down.

■ Press **Left** to return.

Alternatively, press **Options → **Select Help** →**

Press **Left**

Still Images

Photo Camera Mode

Capture images to send via S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc. Various settings and functions are available for camera use.

Picture Size	2M (W 1200 x H 1600 dots: UXGA) 1.2M (W 960 x H 1280 dots: Quad-VGA) Standby (W 480 x H 640 dots: VGA) For Msg. (W 240 X H 320 dots: QVGA) For Msg. (W 120 X H 160 dots: QQVGA)
Format	JPEG (.jpg) ¹
Save Location	Handset Data Folder (Pictures) or Memory Card Data Folder (Pictures/DCIM ²)
Picture Quality	High Quality/Fine/Normal
Digital Zoom	2M (W 1200 x H 1600 dots): None 1.2M (W 960 x H 1280 dots): 1 - 1.3x Standby (W 480 x H 640 dots): 1 - 2.5x For Msg. (W 240 X H 320 dots): 1 - 10x For Msg. (W 120 X H 160 dots): 1 - 20x
S! Mail Attachment	OK
Memory Capacity	340 files ³

¹Default file names appear as *Image001.jpg*, *Image002.jpg*, etc.

²Save W 480 x H 640 dots or larger images.

³Approximate value for handset Data Folder, with default image size (see **P.6-16**) and quality (see **P.6-17**).

- Tip ▶**
- Select storage media beforehand or each time you save an image (see **P.6-18** "Save to").
 - Saved video, melodies, S! Applications, etc. reduce still image memory.
 - To check memory status, see **P.8-2**.
 - Images captured at or above W 480 x H 640 dots are saved as landscape images. (Images appear as portrait images when viewed on handset.)
 - Open image Details and see Resolution for true image dimensions and orientation.

Capturing Still Images

Main Menu ▶ Camera

1 Frame image on Display

- In Video Camera mode, press **[Z]** (+ **[CAM]**) to switch to Photo Camera.
- Key Assignments: see **P.6-4**
- Special Shooting Modes: see **P.6-11**
- Camera Settings: see **P.6-15**



Photo Camera

2 Press **[■]**

Shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

- When Auto Save is active, captured image is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.
- To start over, press **[BACK]**.
- To send image via S! Mail, press **[Z]** (**[✉]**)
 - ➔ Perform from Step 3 on **P.13-8**



3 Press **[■]** to save

Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press **[■]**
- To open saved images, see **P.6-10** "Opening Still Images".

4 Press **[⏪]** to exit

- Tip ▶** **When Captured Image is Unsaved**
Finished? appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.
- Choose **Yes** and press **[■]** to end. Handset returns to Standby.
 - Choose **No** and press **[■]** to return to captured image.

Still Image Functions

Before Image Capture

Press  **Options** to use the following functions:

Exposure	Adjust amount of light (see P.6-16)
Modes¹	Add Frame² Add frames (see P.6-13)
	Continuous Shoot³ Capture images sequentially (see P.6-12)
	Camera Effects² Capture images with special effects (see P.6-14)
Scan Barcode	Scan barcodes (see P.11-18)
My Pictures	Access Data Folder files (see P.6-10)
Picture Size	Select image size (see P.6-16)
Scene	Select a mode according to lighting or subject (see P.6-17)
Picture Quality	Select High Quality , Fine or Normal (see P.6-17)
Self-timer	Set Self-timer (see P.6-11)
Settings	Show Indicators Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see P.6-15)
	Shutter Sound Change shutter click sound (see P.6-15)
	Save Pictures to Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-18)
	Auto Save Select whether to save captured image automatically (see P.6-18)
Internal Camera/ External Camera	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-18)

Help	View a summary of key assignments (see P.6-5)
Mobile Light¹	Select mode (see P.6-16)

¹ Available for External Camera.

² Available when Picture Size is **240 x 320** or smaller.

³ Available when Picture Size is **960 x 1280** or smaller.

Before Saving

Press  **Options** to use the following functions:

Save pictures to	Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-18)
My Pictures	Access Data Folder; delete saved files

Video

Video Camera Mode

Record short video clips to send via S! Mail. Use Memory Cards to save long recordings (recording time varies by card capacity).

Image Size	W 176 x H 144 dots (QCIF)	W 480 x H 640 dots (VGA)	
	W 128 x H 96 dots (SubQCIF)	W 240 x H 320 dots (QVGA)	
		W 240 x H 176 dots (HQVGA) ¹	
Format	MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp) ²	MPEG-4 (.3gp) ²	MPEG-4 (.ASF) ³
Save Location	Handset or Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)	Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)	Memory Card (SD VIDEO)
Video Quality	High Quality/Fine/Normal	High Quality	
S! Mail Attachment	OK	N/A	
Recording Time (per shot)	For Message	Approx. 60 seconds (Normal) Approx. 50 seconds (Fine) Approx. 30 seconds (High Quality)	—
	Extended Video	30 minutes	—
	SD VIDEO	—	Capacity-based

¹MPEG-4 only for HQVGA.

²Default file names appear as **video001.3gp**, **video002.3gp**, etc.

³Default file names appear as **MOL001.ASF**, **MOL002.ASF**, etc.

- Tip** ▶
- For best results, record within 1.5 metres, in good light.
 - Select storage media beforehand or each time you save a video file (see **P.6-18** "Save to").
 - Saved still images, melodies, S! Applications, etc. reduce video memory.
 - To check memory status, see **P.8-2**.

Recording Video

Make sure battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory before recording video. When battery is low, Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low or memory becomes full while recording video, recording stops.

Main Menu ▶ Camera

1 Press (+)

Video Viewfinder appears.

- Omit this step if Video Camera is already active.

2 Frame image on Display

- Key Assignments: see **P.6-4**
- Special Shooting Modes: see **P.6-11**
- Camera Settings: see **P.6-15**



Video Camera

3 Press

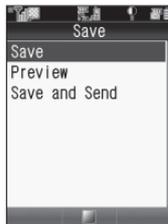
Recording begins after a tone.

 To start over, press .

4 To stop, press

Recording stops with a tone.

- Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached or memory becomes full.
- When Auto Save is active, recorded video is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.



 To play back, select **Preview**  Press 

■ Press  during playback to toggle Display Size.

 To start over, press .

5 To save, select **Save and press**

Video is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

 When confirmation for save location appears, select a location  Press 

6 Press to exit

Tip When Recorded Video is Unsaved

Finished? appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.

- Choose **Yes** and press  to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Choose **No** and press  to return to Menu.

Video Recording Operations

Before Recording

Press  **Options** to use the following functions:

Exposure	Adjust amount of light (see P.6-16)	
Display Size¹	Change Viewfinder size (see P.6-16)	
My Videos	Access Data Folder files (see P.6-10)	
Record Time/Size	Select a format based on recording time and image size (see P.6-17)	
Microphone	Activate to record sound (see P.6-17)	
Video Quality¹	Select High Quality , Fine or Normal (see P.6-17)	
Self-timer²	Set Self-timer (see P.6-11)	
Settings	Video Encode¹	Select a video encoding format (see P.6-18)
	Save Videos to³	Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-18)
	Auto Save	Select whether to save recorded video automatically (see P.6-18)

¹Available for SubQCIF or QCIF.

²Available for External Camera.

³Available when Record Time/Size is set to **For Message**.

Internal Camera¹/ External Camera¹	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-18)
Help	View a summary of key assignments (see P.6-5)
Mobile Light²	Select mode (see P.6-16)

¹Available for SubQCIF or QCIF.

²Available for External Camera.

Tip ▶ Open Options and use Multi Selector or Keypad to open/set items.

Before Saving

The following menu items appear after recording:

Save	Save video to handset or Memory Card (see P.6-9)
Preview	Play video (see P.6-9)
Save and Send[*]	Attach video to S! Mail (see P.6-15)

^{*}Available when Record Time/Size is set to **For Message**. If **Send&Not Save** is set for Send File Settings (see **P.13-38**), **Multimedia** appears.

Opening Images & Playing Video

To open files from Data Folder, see **P.8-4**.

Opening Still Images

Main Menu ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Activate Photo Camera**

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **My Pictures** and press 

- Memory Status appears at the top.

- ▶ When Memory Card is inserted, select **Pictures** or **Camera Images** (DCIM) ▶ Press 

- ▶ To switch between handset and Memory Card (Pictures) press  **Options** ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press 

- ▶ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press 

3 Select a file and press 

- ▶ To open other files, press  ▶ Select one ▶ Press 

Playing Video

Main Menu ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Activate Video Camera**

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **My Videos** and press 

- Memory Status appears at the top.

- ▶ To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press 

- ▶ To open a created sub folder, select it ▶ Press 

3 Select a file and press

Video plays. Press  to pause/resume playback.

 To play other files, press  \rightarrow Select one \rightarrow Press 

SD Video

Play QVGA or VGA size (.ASF) video

Main Menu \rightarrow Media Player \rightarrow Videos \rightarrow SD VIDEO

Select a file \rightarrow Press 

 To open other files, press  \rightarrow Select one \rightarrow Press 

Special Shooting Modes

Self-timer

Delay shutter release after Shutter Key is pressed to capture still images or record video.

- Switch to External Camera to use Self-timer.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6) or recording video (after Step 2 on P.6-8).
- Self-timer is **Off** by default.

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **Self-timer** and press 

3 Select time and press 

Viewfinder returns (,  or  appears).

 To cancel, choose **Off** \rightarrow Press 

4 Frame image on Display and press

Tone sounds and countdown starts.

- After selected time elapses, shutter is released and captured image appears or video recording starts.

 To cancel Self-timer during countdown, press  **Cancel**.

- Viewfinder returns. (Self-timer remains active.)

5 Saving Still Images

1 Press 

Self-timer is cancelled and Viewfinder returns.

 When confirmation for save location appears, select a location \rightarrow Press 

Saving Video

1 To stop, press 

2 To save, select **Save** and press 

Self-timer is cancelled and Viewfinder returns.

 When confirmation for save location appears, select a location \rightarrow Press 

6 Press to exit

 When Captured Image/Recorded Video is Unsaved: see P.6-6 or P.6-9

Note \rightarrow Self-timer is not available when shooting speed for Continuous Shoot (see P.6-12) is **Manual**.

Tip \rightarrow Activate mobile camera and press  to toggle Self-timer as follows:

10 seconds \rightarrow 5 seconds \rightarrow 2 seconds \rightarrow Off

Self-timer Details

- To release shutter manually during countdown, press . Image is captured or video recording starts and Self-timer is cancelled.
- Incoming calls and Alarm interrupt countdown. (Self-timer remains active.)
- Available functions during countdown are Digital Zoom, Mobile Light and Exposure.

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Capture a series of 4 or 9 separate images automatically with a single press of the Shutter Key. Select from three speed settings or choose the manual option to control the rate at which images are captured.

4 Pictures ¹	Capture four separate images with Index Image ²
9 Pictures ¹	Capture nine separate images with Index Image ²
Overlapped ³	Capture five images to create a composite image

¹Available when Picture Size is **480 x 640** or smaller. (Index image is not created for **480 x 640**.)

²Index Image consists of reduced images of each shot.

³Available when Picture Size is **240 x 320** or smaller.

- Press  for the first shot. Handset captures the rest automatically.
- In 4 Pictures or 9 Pictures mode, select shutter interval from three levels, or select **Manual** to release shutter manually.
- Switch to External Camera to use Continuous Shoot.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6).

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **Modes** and press 

3 Select **Continuous Shoot** and press 

4 Select from **4 Pictures to Overlapped** and press 

 To cancel, choose **Off** → Press  (Omit the next steps.)

5 Select speed and press 

Viewfinder returns with the corresponding indicator (see P.6-3).

- **Manual** is not available when Self-timer (see P.6-11) is active.
- Available shooting speed options vary by selected Picture Size.

6 Frame image on Display and press 

The first frame is captured with subsequent frames captured at selected speed.

- For manual control (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat Step 6 for each frame.

 To stop before capturing all frames, press  **Cancel**.

- To save captured images, skip ahead to Step 8.
- To discard captured images, press . (Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.)

7 Index Image or a composite image appears

- When Picture Size is **480 x 640**, the first captured image appears.
- Use  to toggle between frames and Index Image.
 - To save images individually, select a frame or Index Image and proceed to Step 8.



4 Pictures

- To send image via S! Mail, press  () ➔ Perform from Step 3 on **P.13-8**

8 To save, press

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

9 Saving All Images

1 Select All Pictures and press

Images are saved and Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.

Saving the Selected Image

1 Select Selected Picture and press

Image is saved and captured image returns with Continuous Shoot active.

- To save other images, use  to select one ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Selected Picture** ➔ Press 
 - Press  to return to Viewfinder.

10 Press to exit

- When Captured Image is Unsaved: see **P.6-6**

Note ➔ In low light, shooting speed may slow down.

Tip ➔ **When Only Selected Image is Saved Finished?** appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder.

- Choose **Yes** and press  to end. Handset returns to Standby.
- Choose **No** and press  to return to captured image.

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

- In addition to Preset Frames, use transparent PNG files (40 KB or smaller) obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.
- Select Picture Size **240 x 320** or smaller to add frames.
- Switch to External Camera to add frames.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-6**); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Modes** and press

3 Select **Add Frame** and press

4 **Preset Frames**

1 Select **Preset Frames** and press

2 Select a frame and press

- To check frames, select one and press  **View**.
 - Press  to return.

Original Frames

1 Select *My Pictures* and press

- Some images may not be used as a frame.

2 Select a frame and press

- To check frames, select one → Press  **View**

- Press  to return.

3 Press

Cancelling

1 Choose *Off* and press

Tip ▶ In Continuous Shoot, frame is added to each image.

Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

Capture images with special effects.

- Select Picture Size **240 x 320** or smaller to use Camera Effects.
- Switch to External Camera to use Camera Effects.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

1 Press **Options**

2 Select *Modes* and press

3 Select *Camera Effects* and press

4 Select an effect and press

- To check effects, press  **View**.

- Press  to return.

- To cancel, choose **Off** → Press 

Sending Images

Still Images

Capture and send images as S! Mail attachments.

To attach images in Data Folder, see **P.8-11**.

1 Capture an image

- Perform Steps 1 - 2 on P.6-6.

- To attach Continuous Shoot images, after Step 7 on P.6-13, use  to select a frame or Index Image.

2 Press ()

Image is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- To attach images without saving to Data Folder, see **P.13-38** "Send File Settings".

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location → Press 

3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.13-8)

Tip ▶ Make sure recipient's handset is attachment-compatible. For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

Video Clips

Send recorded video clips via S! Mail.

- For details of attachable files, see the table on **P.6-8**.
- To attach video files saved in Data Folder, see **P.8-11**.

1 Record video (perform Steps 1 - 4 on P.6-8 - 6-9)

2 Select **Save and Send** and press

Video is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with the video file attached.

- To attach video without saving to Data Folder, see **P.13-38** "Send File Settings".
 - If **Send&Not Save** is set for Send File Settings (see **P.13-38**), **Multimedia** appears instead of **Save and Send**.
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.13-8)

- Note** ➤
- Send video clips to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets.
 - Only MPEG-4 compatible SoftBank handsets support video files recorded on 810SH or 811SH.

- Tip** ➤ For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

Camera Settings

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode.
- Shortcut keys are assigned to some functions (see **P.6-4** "Function Shortcuts").
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-6**) or recording video (after Step 2 on **P.6-8**); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture/recording.

Shooting Options

Show Indicators

Hide indicators to frame image on full Display

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-------------------------------------

- Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Show Indicators** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Normal Finder or Hide Indicators** ➔ Press 
- DefaultNormal Finder

Shutter Sound

Change shutter click sound

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-------------------------------------

- Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Shutter Sound** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select a pattern** ➔ Press 
- DefaultPattern 1

- To check sound, select a pattern and press  **Play**.
- Volume is fixed.
- Shutter click sound for Continuous Shoot is unique and fixed.

Mobile Light

Select mode

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/> ¹	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/> ^{1, 2}
--------------	------------------------------------	--------------	---------------------------------------

¹Available for External Camera.²**Low Light** is not available.

Default: Off

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Mobile Light** ➔ Press ➔ **Select a mode** ➔ Press

- Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

On	Mobile Light activates (and brightens for still image capture)
Automatic	Mobile Light activates when light is low and brightens for image capture
Low Light	Mobile Light activates and brightness is constant
Off	Mobile Light remains off

- Note** ➤
- Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
 - Even when **On** or **Automatic** is selected, Mobile Light may not illuminate if battery is low.

Display Size

Change Viewfinder size for video

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/> X	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/> *
--------------	-------------------------	--------------	-------------------------

*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default: Original Size

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Display Size** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Original Size or Enlarge** ➔ Press

Image Settings

Exposure

Adjust brightness for still images and video

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default: 0 (standard)

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Exposure** ➔ Press

Use to adjust level

- Setting returns to default when exiting Photo Camera/Video Camera or when switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-18).

Picture Size

Select still image size

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/> X
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-------------------------

Default: Standby (480 x 640)

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Picture Size** ➔ Press ➔ **Select a size (see P.6-5)** ➔ Press

- Select **For Msg. (240 x 320)** or **For Msg. (120 x 160)** for Internal Camera.
- To change video image size, see P.6-17 "Record Time/Size".

Picture/Video Quality

Select image or video quality

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

* Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default Normal (Photo Camera), Fine (Video Camera)

Press **Options** → **Select Picture Quality or Video Quality** → Press → **Select quality** → Press

- The image quality increases as follows: **Normal** → **Fine** → **High Quality**. Saving higher quality images/video requires more space in memory.

Scene

Select a mode according to lighting or subject

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	--------------------------

* Available for External Camera.

Default Automatic

Press **Options** → **Select Scene** → Press → **Select a mode** → Press

- Setting returns to default when exiting Photo Camera/Video Camera or when switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (see P.6-18).

Automatic	Automatic adjustment
Night	Use in low light conditions
Sports	Best suited for action sports or fast-moving subjects
Characters	Most suitable for high contrast black and white subjects

Microphone

Record sound together with video

Photo Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	--------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default On

Press **Options** → **Select Microphone** → Press → **Choose On or Off** → Press

Record Time/Size

Select **For Message** to record short video (up to 295 KB) to send via S! Mail
For longer recording, select **Extended Video**

Photo Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	--------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default For Message, QCIF (176 x 144)

Press **Options** → **Select Record Time/Size** → Press → **Select For Message, Extended Video or SD VIDEO** → Press → **Select an option** → Press

■ For Message

QCIF (176 x 144)	W 176 x H 144 dots Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)
SubQCIF (128 x 96)	W 128 x H 96 dots Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)

■ Extended Video

VGA (480 x 640)	W 480 x H 640 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)
QVGA (240 x 320)	W 240 x H 320 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)
HQVGA (240 x 176)	W 240 x H 176 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.3gp)
QCIF (176 x 144)	W 176 x H 144 dots Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)
SubQCIF (128 x 96)	W 128 x H 96 dots Format: MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp)

■ SD VIDEO

VGA (480 x 640)	W 480 x H 640 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.ASF)
QVGA (240 x 320)	W 240 x H 320 dots Format: MPEG-4 (.ASF)

Video Encode Select a video encoding format

Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-------------------------------------	--------------	--------------------------

*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default MPEG4 (Japan)

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔
Select Video Encode ➔ Press ➔ **Select H.263**
(Europe) or MPEG4 (Japan) ➔ Press

Additional Settings

**Internal Camera/
External Camera** Switch between Internal Camera and External Camera

Photo Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------	--------------------------	--------------	--------------------------

*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default External Camera

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Internal Camera or
External Camera** ➔ Press

- Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

Save to Select a save location for images or video

Photo Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------	--------------------------	--------------	--------------------------

*Available when Record Time/Size is set to **For Message**.

Default Phone Memory (handset)

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔
Select Save Pictures to or Save Videos to ➔ Press
 ➔ **Select a location or Ask Each Time** ➔ Press

- For **Ask Each Time**, confirmation appears each time you save an image or video (with Record Time/Size set to **For Message**).

Camera Mode/Size	Save Location
Photo Camera (120 x 160 or 240 x 320) Video Camera	Phone Memory (handset) Memory Card
Photo Camera (480 x 640 or larger)	Phone Memory (handset) SD (Pictures) (Memory Card) SD (DCIM) (Memory Card)

- Note** ➔
- **Ask Each Time** is not available when Auto Save (see below) is active.
 - To save to Memory Card, insert a card before saving image or recording video.

Auto Save Select whether to save captured images or recorded video automatically

Photo Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------	--------------------------	--------------	--------------------------

Default Off

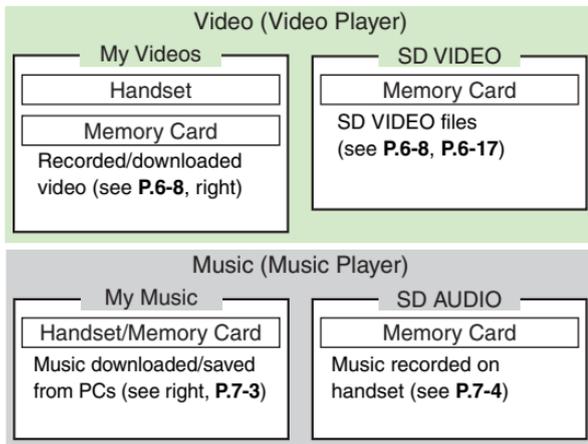
Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select
Auto Save** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔ Press

- Note** ➔ Auto Save is not available when **Ask Each Time** is set for Save Pictures to or Save Videos to (see above).

Media Player

Media Player Basics

Use Media Player to record and listen to music (Music Player) or play video (Video Player). Save video/music files to handset or Memory Card (including SD VIDEO and SD AUDIO). To open files, specify the location first.



- For Playlist details, see **P.7-18**.
- Playback stops when battery is low. Charge battery and resume from where it stopped (see Step 1 on **P.7-10** or **P.7-12**).
- Consume media as it downloads (Streaming: see **P.14-12**).

Incoming Calls/Mail during Playback

- Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.
 - When playback stops while streaming, the URL is saved to History (see **P.14-13**).
- A notification appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

Downloading Music/Video

Open music/video-related links directly from Media Player to download music (Chaku-Uta[®]) and video via the Internet.

- Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.
- Use Music Search (see **P.7-3**) to search by title, artist, etc.

Main Menu ► Media Player

- 1 Select Music or Videos and press**
- 2 Select Download Music or Download Videos and press**

Handset connects to the Internet and the corresponding download page appears.

- Follow the links to download music/video.

Music Search

■ Follow these steps to access Yahoo! Keitai Music Search site.

In Step 1 on P.7-2, select *Music* ➔ Press ➔

Select *Music Search* ➔ Press

- Fill in fields or follow links to search for/download music.

Downloading Content Keys

Content Keys are required to use some downloaded files.

- Acquire Key to play a copy protected file (🔒 or 🚫 appears).
- To download Keys, open All Music/All Videos or Playlist (see Step 2 on P.7-10/Step 3 on P.7-13) then follow these steps.

1 Select a file and press

Select a file with 🔒 or 🚫.

2 Choose Yes and press

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Music Files from PCs

Save music files onto Memory Cards from CDs, etc. using PCs or other devices to play them on handset Music Player.

Precautions for Handling Music Files on PCs

■ Respect copyrights.

- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using music saved on Memory Cards.
- Under copyright law, music saved on Memory Cards is limited to private use.

■ Play SD-Audio standard compliant music files.

(These files cannot be used as ringtones.)

Handset supports Secure AAC and AAC files compliant with the SD-Audio standard.

- For AAC files, see "Precautions for Handling AAC Files" on P.7-4.

■ Save music to the specified directory.

Save music to either of the following folders on Memory Card using a Memory Card reader/writer or other compatible device.

- PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
- PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones

Details

- For more about saving music files from PCs, see "Utility Software Starter Guide" on Utility Software CD-ROM.

Precautions for Handling AAC Files

Use software supporting AAC conversion.

- Use software such as iTunes to convert music to AAC format.
- iTunes is an example only. SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.

iTunes is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. registered in the United States and other countries.

Supported bit rate (see right) and sampling frequency (see P.7-6) are as follows.

Bit Rate (kbps)	16 ^{*1} , 24 ^{*1} , 32, 48, 64, 96 ^{*2} , 128 ^{*2}
Sampling Frequency (Hz)	16000, 22050, 24000, 32000, 44100, 48000

*1 Monaural only.

*2 Stereo only.

Note ▶ Titles and artist names for AAC files created using iTunes, etc. do not appear on handset.

Recording Music

Connect handset to audio sources supporting optical output to record music onto Memory Cards.

- 810SH/811SH encryption technology complies with Secure Digital Music Initiative (SDMI) for copyright protection. This technology prevents unauthorised copying or playback through data encryption and authentication.
- Analogue recording is not supported.

Required Cables for Recording Music

- Optical Conversion Cable (optional accessory)
- Optical digital connecting cable (sold separately)

Recording Time

Estimated Recording Time for Memory Card with no Files or Recordings:

Card Capacity	Bit Rate/Recording Time	
	96 kbps	128 kbps
64 MB	80 minutes	60 minutes

Bit rate measures audio compression rate or the quality of audio data recorded per second. Sound quality improves at higher rates.

Precautions before Recording

Charge battery while recording.

- Recording stops when battery level falls too low. Always use AC Charger when recording to ensure a stable power supply.
- When battery is low, Music Player will not record. If battery runs low while recording, recording stops.

Music is recorded onto Memory Card (SD AUDIO folder).

To start Music Player, insert a Memory Card formatted for 810SH or 811SH (see **P.8-19**, **P.8-21**).

Activate Offline Mode to prevent disruptions (see Steps 1 - 2 on P.7-7).

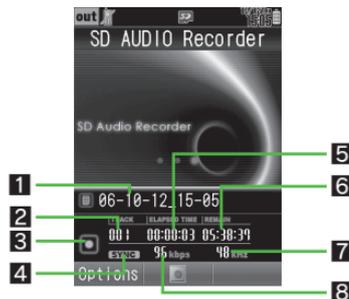
Incoming communications may disrupt recording or damage outputs of audio sources. (To place calls or send mail, stop recording and cancel Offline Mode.)

Do not remove Memory Card while recording.

Doing so may damage the card or result in lost files.

- Note** ▶
- Under copyright law, duplicated material is limited to private use. Unauthorised reproduction or use is prohibited.
 - SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recordings.
 - Music recorded onto Memory Card cannot be recopied to other media digitally.

Recording Window Indicators



1 Title

2 Track Number

3 Status

- : Recording, ■: Stopped

4 Synch Recording (see P.7-8)

- Synch Recording On

5 Elapsed Time

6 Remaining Recording Time

- Reduces after each recording

7 Sampling Frequency (see P.7-6)

8 Bit Rate (see P.7-8)

Track Bookmarks

Add Bookmarks to music in Playlist to divide it into tracks for Repeat or Random Play. Track Bookmarks are created when a period of silence is detected between music files.

- When recording from CD/MD players, etc., track numbers remain the same as the original.
- If Music Player does not detect a period of silence, recorded music files are all combined and saved as a single track.
- When Synch Recording is **On**, recording pauses after a period of silence. Recording resumes when sound (next music) is detected.
 - When Synch Recording is **On**, recording stops after 15 seconds of pause.
- Brief sound dropouts occur when Track Bookmarks are created.
- Track Bookmarks may not be created automatically depending on the connected audio source. In this case, divide music into tracks manually (see Step 4 on **P.7-8**).

Note ► Recording may result in silence or a single music file with a low volume level if the music consists of long periods of silence or sustained low volume level.

Sampling Frequency

Sampling frequency is the number of times an audio signal is measured (sampled) per second, expressed in kilohertz (kHz). Similar to bit rate, higher rates translate into better sound quality. Sampling frequency is automatically set to 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz according to the recording method or audio source.

When recording from DVD players, cancel DTS.

Note ► Recording results may not be satisfactory depending on the signal format.

Connecting to Audio Sources

Precautions

Connect Optical Conversion Cable with an optical digital connecting cable, then to handset gently. Disconnect Optical Conversion Cable gently by holding the plug and handset.

Do not use excessive force when connecting/disconnecting cables; doing so may damage cable, Mini Plug or Headphone/Optical Digital Line-In Port.

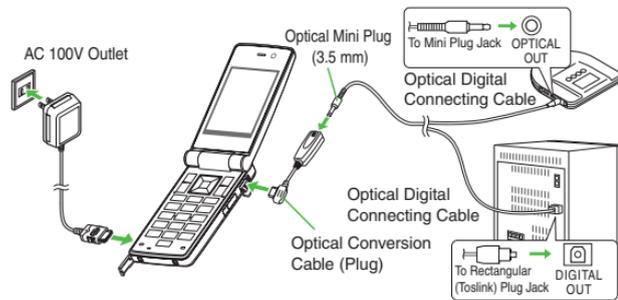
Use specified Optical Conversion Cable only.

Non-specified cables may not function properly and damage may result.

Cable Connections

Use Optical Digital Audio Toslink-Mini or Mini-Mini Cables (sold separately) with Optical Conversion Cable to connect audio sources to handset.

- Use Optical Conversion Cable only for recording music.
- Optical Conversion Cable is designed exclusively for 810SH, 811SH and other specified SoftBank handsets. Do not use for other devices to prevent damage or malfunction.



Recording

- Most operations are described with Synch Recording active.
- Read the precautions on P.7-5 before recording.
- To listen to music while recording, adjust Monitor Level before recording (see P.7-8).

- Prepare an audio source and pause playback at the beginning of music.

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Music

1 Select **SD AUDIO Recorder** and press

Receive calls during recording? appears.

- To prevent disruption by calls, choose **No** and press in Step 2 to activate Offline Mode (see P.2-20).
- If Offline Mode is already active, skip ahead to Step 3.
- **SD AUDIO Recorder** can only be selected when a Memory Card is inserted.

2 Choose **No** and press

Recording window opens.

- Customise settings before recording (see P.7-8 "Recording Settings").
- To accept incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

3 Press

Handset is ready for Synch Recording (see P.7-8).

- When Synch Recording is **Off**, recording starts right away. When audio source is not paused, recording remains paused.



4 Start playback

Recording starts automatically when handset detects sound.

- When Synch Recording is **Off** and there is silence between tracks, Track Bookmark (see P.7-6) is created automatically.

To create Track Bookmarks (see P.7-6) manually, press  **Mark** while recording.

5 To stop recording, stop playback on the audio source

Recording pauses, then stops after 15 seconds.

- If **No** was chosen then  was pressed in Step 2 on P.7-7, Offline Mode is cancelled after recording ends.

When Synch Recording is **Off**, press  to stop recording.

Note ▶ • Do not remove Memory Card or battery while recording. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.

- Do not touch cables or plugs while recording. May cause noise or skipping.
- When recording from PCs or BS/CS digital tuners, recording level may decrease.

Tip ▶ • Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Music Player stops/closes.
• Recorded music is saved by date and time by default.

Recording Settings

Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.7-7.

Monitor Level Set volume level to listen to music while recording

Press  **Options** ▶ **Select Monitor Level** ▶ Press  Default: Level 3
▶ **Use**  to adjust level ▶ Press 

Synch Recording Select whether to start recording automatically when playback starts on audio sources

Press  **Options** ▶ **Select Synch Recording** ▶ Press  Default: On
▶ **Choose On (start) or Off** ▶ Press 
• When recording from a CD without silence between tracks with Synch Recording **Off**, Track Bookmark is not created.

Bit Rate Select a bit rate (see P.7-4 "Recording Time")

Press  **Options** ▶ **Select Bit Rate** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Normal (96 kbps) or High-quality (128 kbps)** ▶ Press  Default: Normal (96 kbps)
• Sound quality is better at 128 kbps. However, recording time shortens as more space is required in memory.

Auto Mark Level Select sensitivity to detect silence for creating Track Bookmarks

Press  **Options** ▶ **Select Auto Mark Level** ▶ Press  Default: -41dB
▶ **Select -41dB or -59dB** ▶ Press 
• Select **-59dB** for soft music to prevent unintended Track Bookmark creation.

Playing Music

Play music on handset/Memory Card.

Use Headphones, etc. to listen to sound without bothering others.

Precautions before Playing Music/Video

- Music Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Music may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Grasp the plug when connecting or disconnecting Headphones. Do not bend the plug to avoid damaging the cord or Headphone Port.
- Use only the specified accessories (Headphones, etc.). Other devices may not function properly and cause damage to Headphone Port.
- When battery is low, Music Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Music Player shuts off.

- Tip ▶**
- To activate/cancel Manner mode during playback, press  for 1+ seconds.
 - In Manner mode, sound is audible from Headphones.
 - To answer calls during playback with Headphones, etc., press Call Button for 1+ seconds.
 - Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
 - Large files may take longer to open. My Music and Playlists may take longer to open if large files are saved.

Playback Window Indicators



1 Playback in Progress

2 Playlist Name

3 Title

- Titles also appear on External Display during playback.

4 Artist Name

- **No Artist Name** appears if not available.
- Artist names also appear on External Display during playback.

5 Track Number

6 Status

- ▶: Playing, ■: Paused, ■: Fast Forwarding, ■: Fast Rewinding

7 Playback Pattern (see P.7-11)

- ◀ 1: Repeat, ◀ : Repeat All, ⤵: Random
- Indicator does not appear for Normal.

8 Elapsed Time

9 Volume

10 Information Link

-  appears when linked information is accessible via WEB Link Connection (see P.7-11 "Accessing Linked Information").

1 Tone Control (see P.7-11)

- : Bass, : Surround, : Surround Bass,
 Karaoke : Karaoke, **Rock** : Rock, **Hall** : Hall, **HipHop** : Hiphop
 • Indicator does not appear for Normal.

Playback

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Music

1 Select My Music or SD AUDIO and press

- For **My Music**, use to select **Music Folder** or **Ring Songs-Tones**.
- To play the last played file from where it stopped, select **Last Played Music** ▶ Press



My Music

2 Select All Music or a Playlist and press

- Three Playlists (7°プレイリスト1 to 7°プレイリスト3) are saved by default.
- To search files, press **Options** ▶ Select **Search** ▶ Press ▶ Enter search text ▶ Press
 - When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.
 - To sort files, press **Options** ▶ Select **Sort** ▶ Press ▶ Select a sort option ▶ Press
 - **Sort** is available for files in All Music.

3 Select a file and press

- Playback window opens and playback starts.
- Playback stops after the last file when Playback Pattern is set to **Normal** (see P.7-11).

Tip ▶ Use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones (optional accessory) to remote control Music Player activated via Music menu.

Playback Operations (Music/Video)

Replay	Press Press repeatedly to play previous files. ¹
Skip Forward	Press ²
Fast Forward	Press and hold Release for playback.
Fast Rewind	Press and hold Release for playback.
Pause	Press Press again to resume playback.
Volume Control ³	Press / (up) or / (down)
Mute	Press (Long Press) Press to play sound.

¹In Random Play, only replays the current file.

²Not available for the last file when Playback Pattern is set to **Normal**.

³Volume level remains as set until changed.

Opening File Properties

- **While playing or paused, press **Options** ▶ Select **Information** ▶ Press**
 - Press to scroll down.
 - To return, press .

Accessing Linked Information

- While playing or paused, press  **Options** → **Select WEB Link Connection** → **Press**  → **Choose Yes** → **Press** 
- Linked information is accessible while  appears.
- Accessing linked information activates Yahoo! Keitai and may incur transmission fees. Press  to disconnect.

Note ▶ Playback pauses for Alarm, then resumes automatically.

- Tip** ▶
- Press  to create mail messages and use Phone Book, etc. during playback; however, some functions are not available.
 - **Stop music?** appears when  is pressed in Standby. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

Playback Settings

Tone Control

Increase bass for dynamic sound or create a surround field

- For Speaker sound, only **Karaoke** takes effect.
Default Normal

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* → *Music* → *Settings*

Select Tone Control → **Press**  → **Select an effect**
→ **Press** 

Normal	No sound effects
Bass	Boosts bass frequencies
Surround	Adds surround effect
Surround Bass	Adds surround effect with enhanced bass
Karaoke	Adds softening effect ideal for vocals
Rock	Adds low to high frequencies, enhancing balance
Hall	Boosts high frequencies, enhancing reverberation
Hiphop	Boosts bass to midrange, enhancing resonance

Playback Pattern

Play files repeatedly or in random order

Default Normal

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* → *Music* → *Settings*

Select Playback Pattern → **Press**  → **Select a pattern**
→ **Press** 

Normal	Play in order until the last file ends
Repeat	Repeat one file
Repeat All	Repeat all files in the current Playlist
Random	Play files in the current Playlist in random order

Playing Video

Play video files recorded with mobile camera or obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.

- Use Headphones, etc. to listen to sound without bothering others.
- Read precautions on **P.7-9** beforehand.

Playback Window Indicators



1 Video Image/Subtitles

2 Clip Number

3 Status

- ▶: Playing, ■: Paused, ▣: Advancing Frame,
- ⏩: Fast Forwarding, ⏪: Fast Rewinding

4 Playback Pattern (see P.7-13)

- Indicators are the same as those for Music Player (see **P.7-9**).

5 Elapsed Time

- To specify start point, see **P.7-13** "Time Search".

6 Volume

7 Information Link

- appears when linked information is accessible via WEB Link Connection (see **P.7-11** "Accessing Linked Information").
- To disable linked information, see **P.7-14** "Web Link Settings".

8 Sound Settings (see P.7-14)

- ▬ : Bass, ⏪⏩: Surround, ⏪⏩⏩: Surround + Bass
- Indicator does not appear when Surround and Bass are **Off**.

Playback

Play video on Video Player.

- To change playback settings, see **P.7-13**.
- To add subtitles, see **P.7-15**.
- To export video to TVs or other display devices, see **P.9-10** "Viewing Images on External Devices".

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Videos

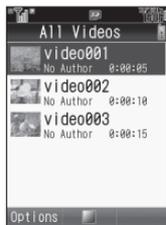
1 Select **My Videos** or **SD VIDEO** and press

- For **SD VIDEO**, skip ahead to Step 4 on **P.7-13**.
- ▶ To play the last played file from where it stopped, select **Last Played Video** ▶ Press

2 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** and press

3 Select **All Videos** or a Playlist and press

- To search files, press **Options** \rightarrow Select **Search** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow Enter search text \rightarrow Press
 - When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.
- To sort files, press **Options** \rightarrow Select **Sort** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow Select a sort option \rightarrow Press
 - **Sort** is available for files in All Videos.



All Videos

4 Select a file and press

- Playback window opens and playback starts.
- Playback stops after the last file when Playback Pattern is set to **Normal** (see right).
 - To access linked information, see P.7-11.

Playback Operations (Video Only)

For basic operations, see P.7-10 "Playback Operations (Music/Video)".

Available while playing or paused.

Change Settings	Press Options \rightarrow Select Settings \rightarrow Press \rightarrow See right
Edit	See P.7-14
Frame Advance	While paused, press (Long Press)
Toggle Display Size	Press or (see P.7-14)
Open Help	Press 02+ , or press Options \rightarrow Select Help \rightarrow Press

Video with Linked Information

- After playing video (with) Internet connection confirmation appears.
 - To access linked information, choose **Yes** \rightarrow Press
 - Confirmation does not appear when Web Link Settings (see P.7-14) is **Off**.

Time Search

- Specify start point while playing or paused.
 - Press **Options** \rightarrow Select **Time Search** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow Enter time \rightarrow Press

- Tip** \rightarrow
- Video recorded on other devices may appear rotated.
 - Out of Video Playback window, Media Player shuts down after five minutes of inactivity.

Playback Settings

Available for files in My Videos only.

Playback Pattern	Play files repeatedly or in random order
-------------------------	--

Default Normal

Main Menu \rightarrow Media Player \rightarrow Videos \rightarrow Settings

Select Playback Pattern \rightarrow Press \rightarrow Select a pattern \rightarrow Press

Normal	Play in order until the last file ends
Repeat	Repeat one file
Repeat All	Repeat all files in the current Playlist
Random	Play files in the current Playlist in random order

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for playback

Default: Always On

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *Settings*

Select **Backlight** ▶ Press ▶ Select a pattern ▶ Press

Always On	Backlight remains on during playback
Always Off	Backlight remains off during playback
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (see P.9-9)

Display Size

Change playback size

Default: Enlarge

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *Settings*

Select **Display Size** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Normal, Enlarge or Full Screen** ▶ Press

- Alternatively, press or during playback to toggle Display Size as follows: Full Screen (no indicators) → Full Screen (with indicators) → Normal → Enlarge
 - Press or in paused Full Screen view to show or hide indicators.

Sound Settings

Activate/cancel Surround/Bass; use Headphones for a more pleasant sound experience

Default: Normal

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *Settings*

Select **Sound Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Normal, Bass, Surround or Surround Bass** ▶ Press

- For descriptions of each effect, see P.7-11 "Tone Control".

Web Link Settings

Select whether to show linked information

Default: On

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *Settings*

Select **Web Link Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On (show) or Off** ▶ Press

Editing Video

HQVGA (W 240 x H 176 dots) or larger video cannot be edited.

Crop	Select Two Points	Save portion between two points as a new file
	Delete Before	Save portion after selected point as a new file
	Delete After	Save portion before selected point as a new file
Subtitle		Add subtitle text to video

- Note** ▶
- Some files may not be edited.
 - Edited video may not play properly if Memory Card is not formatted for 810SH or 811SH.
 - To save to Memory Card, a maximum of 1.2 MB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

Clipping Portions between Two Points

Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.7-13.

1 While playing or paused, press  **Options**

2 Select **Edit** and press 

3 Choose **Yes** and press 

- Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.

4 Select **Crop** and press 

5 Select **Select Two Points** and press 

Video plays.

- Press  to pause/start video.

6 Press  **Start** at the start point

The start point is specified and playback resumes.

7 Press  **End** at the end point

The portion is saved and playback starts.

Note ► Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

Cropping Video Clips

Delete the portion before or after the selected point to save the rest as a new file.

Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.7-13.

1 While playing or paused, press  **Options**

2 Select **Edit** and press 

3 Choose **Yes** and press 

- Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.

4 Select **Crop** and press 

5 Select **Delete Before** or **Delete After** and press 

Video plays.

- To adjust start point, press  to start/pause video.
- The portion before or after the selected point will be deleted.
- To cancel, press .

6 Press  **Cut** at approximate start point

The remaining portion is saved and playback starts.

Note ► Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

Adding Subtitles

Set subtitles to appear while playing video. Select timing, add effects, etc.

Entering Text

After entry, set timing and time period for subtitles.

- Save up to ten subtitles of up to 48 single-byte alphanumeric per entry.
- Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.7-13.

1 While playing or paused, press  **Options**

- 2 Select **Edit** and press
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press
 - Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.
- 4 Select **Edit Subtitle** and press
- 5 Select a number and press
- 6 Enter text and press
 - Press to pause/play video.
- 7 Press **Start** at the start point

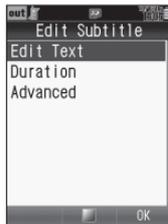
- 8 Press **End** at the end point

Edit Subtitle menu opens.

- If video has ended before pressing **End**, start over from Step 7.
- To edit text, select **Edit Text** Press Edit text Press

- 9 Change display settings (see right) and add effects (see P.7-17 - 7-18)

- To complete without changing display settings or adding effects, proceed to Step 10.



Edit Subtitle Menu

- 10 After completing all the settings, press **OK**
 - To add more, repeat Steps 5 - 10.
 - To edit saved subtitles, select one Press Select **Edit Text** Press Edit Press Perform from Step 9
 - To delete saved subtitles, select one Press **Options** Select **Delete** Press Choose **Yes** Press

- 11 Press **Save**

- 12 Select **Overwrite or Create New** and press
 - Playback starts. (Subtitles appear only in Normal size.)

Display Settings

Follow these steps in Step 9 on the left.

Duration Set timing and time period for subtitles

- Select **Duration** Press Press **Start** at the start point Press **End** at the end point
- When finished, perform from Step 10 above.

Display Position Set position for subtitles to appear

- Select **Advanced** Press Select **Display Position** Press Use to select a position Press
- When finished, press Perform from Step 10 above

Font Size

Change font size of subtitles

Default Large (20 x 20)

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Font Size** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Large (20x20)** or **Small (12x12)** ➔ Press

When finished, press ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

Scrolling

Select a direction and visual effect for subtitle scroll

Default Direction: Stop, Effect: Frame In

Scroll Direction

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Scrolling** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Direction** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Stop, Left to Right** or **Right to Left** ➔ Press

When finished, press ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

Scroll Effects

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Scrolling** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Effect** ➔ Press ➔ Select an effect ➔ Press

Frame In	Subtitle comes in from an end, then disappears in the centre
Frame Out	Subtitle appears in the centre and scrolls out
Rolling	Subtitle scrolls from end to end

When finished, press ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

On-Screen Time

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Scrolling** ➔ Press ➔ Select **On-Screen Time** ➔ Press ➔ Enter time ➔ Press

When finished, press ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

Background Colour

Select from seven background colours

Default Black

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Background Colour** ➔ Press ➔ Select a colour ➔ Press

When finished, press ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

Adding Text Effects

- Up to two effects can be applied per entry.
- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.7-16.

Font Colour

Change font colours

Default White

Changing Colour of Entire Text

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Font Colour** ➔ Press ➔ Select **All** ➔ Press ➔ Select a colour ➔ Press

When finished, press ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

Changing Colour of Portion

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Font Colour** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Select Text** ➔ Press ➔ Use to select the first character of text ➔ Press ➔ Use to select the end point ➔ Press ➔ Select a colour ➔ Press

When finished, press ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

Highlight

Highlight subtitles

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press **[M]** ➔ Select **Highlight** ➔ Press **[M]** ➔ Use **[Left]** to select the first character of text ➔ Press **[M]** ➔ Use **[Right]** to select the end point ➔ Press **[M]** ➔ Select a colour ➔ Press **[M]**

When finished, press **[M]** ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

Blink

Set subtitles to flash

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press **[M]** ➔ Select **Blink** ➔ Press **[M]** ➔ Use **[Left]** to select the first character of text ➔ Press **[M]** ➔ Use **[Right]** to select the end point ➔ Press **[M]**

When finished, press **[M]** ➔ Perform from Step 10 on P.7-16

Reset

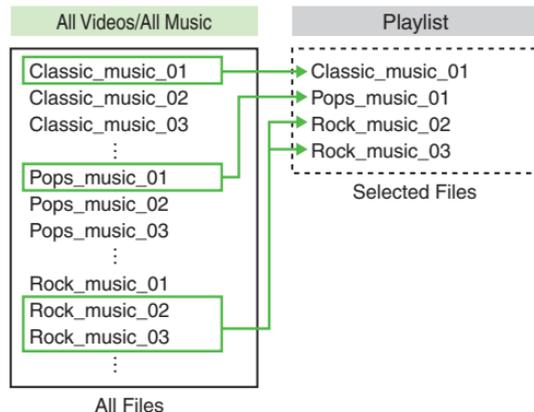
Reset Advanced subtitle settings

Select **Advanced** ➔ Press **[M]** ➔ Press **[M]** **Reset** ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press **[M]**

- Reset does not affect Duration setting.

Managing Video & Music Files

Organise video/music files on handset in My Videos and My Music. All files are saved in **All Videos** or **All Music**. Use Playlists to organise them.



- Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Videos or All Music.
- Three Playlists are saved by default. To create new Playlists, see P.7-19.
- Use **Music Manager** on the supplied Utility Software CD-ROM to create Playlists and organise music files via PCs.

Note ➔ To save video to Memory Card, a maximum of 1.2 MB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

Adding New Playlist

Create up to 99 Playlists in *My Videos*, *My Music* and *SD AUDIO* each.

- Playlists cannot be added into *SD VIDEO*.
- **Playlist 1** to **Playlist 3** (or **📁 1** to **📁 3**) are saved in My Videos and My Music by default.

Main Menu ▶ Media Player

1 Video Playlists

- 1 Select *Videos* and press
- 2 Select *My Videos* and press
- 3 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*

Music Playlists

- 1 Select *Music* and press
- 2 Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO*

2 Press

- To delete Playlists, select one ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select *Delete Playlist* ➔ Press ➔ Choose *Yes* ➔ Press
- To rename Playlists, select one ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select *Edit List Title* ➔ Press ➔ Enter new name ➔ Press



My Videos

3 Press **Options**

4 Select *Add New Playlist* and press

5 Enter name and press

Adding Files to Playlists

Add files to Playlists from *All Videos* or *All Music*.

- Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Videos or All Music.
- Files in *SD VIDEO* cannot be added to Playlists.

Main Menu ▶ Media Player

1 Adding Video Files

- 1 Select *Videos* and press
- 2 Select *My Videos* and press
- 3 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*

Adding Music Files

- 1 Select *Music* and press
- 2 Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO*

2 Press

3 Select *All Videos* or *All Music* and press

4 Select a file and press **Options**

5 Select *Add to Playlist* and press

6 Select a Playlist and press

File is added to the end of the Playlist.

-  To delete saved files, press  → Select a Playlist → Press  → Select a file → Press  **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 
-  To move files within a list, press  → Select a Playlist → Press  → Select a file → Press  **Options** → Select **Change Order** → Press  → Use  to move file → Press 

Opening Playlist Properties

-  Follow these steps when Playlists are listed (see Step 2 on **P.7-10**, Step 3 on **P.7-13** or Step 2 on **P.7-19**).
Select a Playlist → Press  **Options** → Select **Information** → Press 

Deleting Files in SD VIDEO & SD AUDIO

Delete video files in **SD VIDEO** and music files in **All Music** of **SD AUDIO**.

Source files will be deleted.

Deleting Video Files

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *SD VIDEO*

- 1** Select a file and press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Delete** and press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 

Deleting Music Files

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Music* ▶ *SD AUDIO* ▶ *All Music*

- 1** Select a file and press  **Options**
- 2** Select **Delete Track** and press 
- 3** Choose **Yes** and press 

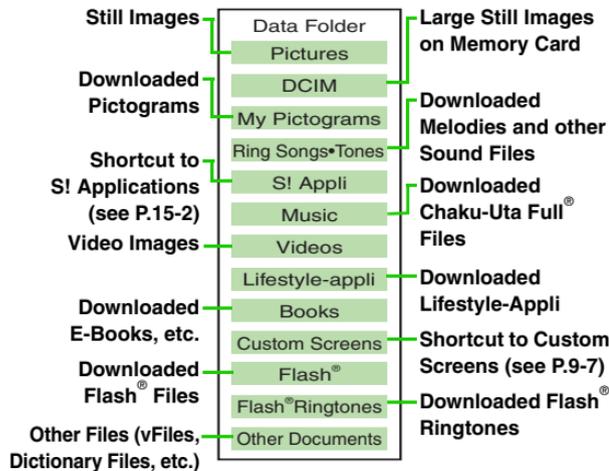
Deleting Files in My Videos/My Music

-  Delete files in All Videos and All Music from **Videos** and **Ring Songs/Tones/Music** in Data Folder respectively (see **P.8-8**).

Managing Files (Data Folder)

Data Folder

Handset files are organised in folders by file format.



- Tip ▶**
- Access the corresponding Yahoo! Keitai Menu directly from *Pictures*, *My Pictograms*, *Ring Songs•Tones*, *S! Appli*, *Music*, *Videos*, *Lifestyle-appli*, *Books* and *Custom Screens*.
 - Exchange files via Bluetooth® (see P.10-2) or infrared (see P.10-10) with compatible SoftBank handsets.

Window Description

To open Data Folder from Standby, follow these steps.

- Press → **Select Data Folder** →
Press



Memory Status

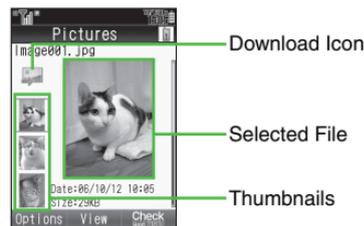
- To check memory usage status, open Data Folder and follow these steps.

Select **Memory Status** → Press → **Select Phone Memory or Memory Card** → Press

- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.

File List

In Data Folder, select a folder and press . File list appears.



Pictures

Major Icons

Still Image & Animation Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	JPEG (.jpg)	JPEG image
	PNG (.png)	PNG image
	E-Animation (NEVA files) (.nva)	Animation (may include sound)
	SVG (.svgz)	SVG-T file

Video Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	MPEG-4 (.3gp)	3GPP video image
	MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp or .mp4)	3GPP video image

Sound Files

Icon	Format & Extension	Description
	SMAF (.mmf)	Melody via the Internet (may include images)
	Audio (.mp4)	Downloaded Chaku-Uta®
	Voice (.amr)	Voice/sound recorded on Voice Recorder

- Tip** ▶
-  appears for copy protected files.  appears for files in the public domain.
 -  appears for files used for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtone, ringvideo, etc.
 -  appears for copy/forward protected files.

Display Settings

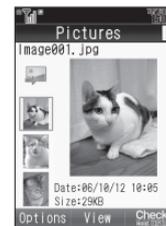
Switching File List View



Inline



Grid



Preview

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

- 1 Select a folder and press** 

 - Select a folder other than My Pictograms, Ring Songs-Tones, S! Appli, Music, Lifestyle-appli, Flash® or Flash® Ringtones.

- 2 Press**  **Options**
- 3 Select *Manage Items* and press** 
- 4 Select *Change List View* and press** 
- 5 Select *Inline View, Grid View or Preview View* and press** 
 - **Preview View** appears for folders other than Books, Videos, Custom Screens or Other Documents.

Tip ▶ Alternatively, press  in file list to toggle the view.

Sorting Files

Sort files by name, date, size, type or Content Key status.
Select **Unsorted** to list files randomly.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

- Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press 

2 Press Options

- If **Download** icon is highlighted in file list, skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select **Manage Items** and press

4 Select **Sort** and press

5 Select a method and press

Note ▶ It may take a while to sort many files.

Tip ▶ To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.

Opening Files

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

File list appears.

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  Options ▶
Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press 
- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press 

2 Select a file and press

The content plays or appears.

- Press  to zoom in. (Press repeatedly to zoom in more.)
 - To zoom out, press .
- Press  (up) or  (down) to adjust volume.
- To switch sound file name display, select a file ▶
Press  Options ▶ Select **Item Displayed** ▶ Press  ▶
Select **File Name** or **Title** (default) ▶ Press 

3 Press to return to file list

- Press  twice to return to file list from zoomed view.
- From file list, press  to return to Data Folder.



File List (Pictures)

Note ▶ Remote control on LCD Remote/Mic (optional accessory) is disabled for Music Player activated via Data Folder.

Activating Mobile Camera

■ Open file list in Pictures, DCIM or Videos folder and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ▶ Select **Take Picture or Record Video** ▶ Press

- Mobile camera activates in Photo Camera mode from Pictures and DCIM folders, or in Video Camera mode from Videos folder.
- To capture still images, see **P.6-6**.
- To record video, see **P.6-8**.

Selecting Multiple Files

Select multiple files in a folder to move, copy or delete them all at the same time.

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select a folder and press

- Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press

2 Select a file and press **Check**

- appears.
- To uncheck, select a file with ▶ Press **Uncheck**

3 Repeat Step 2 to select more

- Copy, move, or delete files (see **P.8-9**).

Slide Show

Main Menu ▶ *Data Folder*

1 Select **Pictures** or **DCIM** and press

- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press

2 Select a file and press **Options**

3 Select **Slide Show** and press

Slide Show starts.

- All images in the folder appear sequentially.
- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press or to advance or reverse frames.

4 Press to stop

Setting Interval

■ Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press **Set** ▶ Select **Speed** ▶ Press ▶
Select **Fast, Normal, Slow or Manual** ▶ Press

- Speed is **Normal** by default.

Repeat Slide Show

■ Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press **Set** ▶ Select **Repeat** ▶ Press ▶
Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press

- For **Off**, all images in the folder appear then file list returns.
- Repeat is **On** by default.

Properties

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press 

2 Select a file and press Options

- Select multiple files as needed.

3 Select *Details or Information* and press

- Press  to scroll down.
- The following information appears:
File name, type, size, last modified date, vendor, copy/forward protection and other restrictions (number of times to open, expiry term), etc.
 - Available information varies by file.

SVG Files

- Handset supports Scalable Vector Graphics-Tiny (SVG-T). Follow these steps to view graphics such as tables or maps.

Press  ▶ **Select Data Folder** ▶ Press  ▶
Select Other Documents ▶ Press  ▶ **Select an SVG file** ▶ Press 

- Press  **Options** to use the following functions.
- Key Assignments:

Line Scroll	
Page Scroll	 (Up),  (Left),  (Right),  (Down)
Zoom	 (Zoom Out),  (Zoom In)
Rotate	 (Counterclockwise),  (Clockwise)
Key Action Mode	
Set Default	

- Some features may not be available depending on the file.
- To create SVG files via PC, use PC Document Conversion Utility on Utility Software CD-ROM.
- For more information on SVG-T, visit http://j.sst.ne.jp/svg/index_pdc.html (Japanese only).

CCF Files

- Follow these steps to read CCF files (comics, photo books, etc. saved in Books folder) designed for ComicSurfing® application (see P.17-8).

Press ➔ **Select Data Folder** ➔ Press ➔
Select Books ➔ Press ➔ **Select a CCF file** ➔
Press

- ComicSurfing® S! Application starts.
- Refer to the ComicSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.
- When an S! Application is paused, **Application suspended. End application?** appears. Choose **Yes** and press twice to start ComicSurfing®.
- When ComicSurfing is paused, properties of opened CCF file may not be accessible.

Flash®

- Download Flash® animation files via the Internet; use as Wallpaper (see P.9-3), etc.

Flash® Ringtones

- Download Flash® Ringtones via the Internet; use as ringtones with Flash® animation (see above).

My Pictograms

- Download GIF image Pictograms via the Internet; create Arrange Mail (see P.13-12).

Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

- Assign different names to folders within a layer.
- Folders cannot be added to DCIM, S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press
- 2 Press **Options**
- 3 Select **Manage Items** and press
- 4 Select **Create Folder** and press
- 5 Enter name and press

Changing File/Folder Name

- File extensions do not change.
- Assign different names to files/folders within a layer.
 - Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, !, ?, # and " are not supported.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Folders/files in DCIM, S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder cannot be renamed.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press
- 2 Select a file or folder and press Options
- 3 Select *Manage Items* and press
- 4 Select *Rename* and press
- 5 Edit name and press

Deleting Files & Folders

Delete files and created folders in Data Folder.
To delete S! Applications, see P.15-6 "Deleting S! Applications".

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press
 - Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
- 2 *Deleting Folders*
 - 1 Select a folder and press Options

Deleting Single Files

 - 1 Select a file and press Options

Deleting Multiple Files

 - 1 Perform from Step 2 on P.8-5 to select multiple files and press Options

Deleting All Created Folders & Files

 - 1 Select a file and press Options
 - 2 Select *Manage Items* and press
- 3 Select *Delete* or *Delete All* and press
 - For deleting folders or *Delete All*, enter Handset Code ▶ Press
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press

Copying/Moving Files

Copy or move files to the corresponding folder on Memory Card or to created sub folders within the folder (handset or Memory Card).

- Copy or move files in DCIM folder to Pictures folder (handset or Memory Card).
- Copy/forward protected files cannot be copied.
- Some files may not be copied or moved.
- Files in S! Appli and Lifestyle-appli folders cannot be copied or moved.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

- Select a folder other than S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli.
- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press

2 Copying/Moving Single Files

1 Select a file and press Options

Copying/Moving Multiple Files

1 Perform from Step 2 on P.8-5 to select multiple files and press Options

3 Select *Copy* or *Move* and press

4 Select *Phone* or *Memory Card* and press

- To move files set as Wallpaper or used for other functions, choose **Yes** ▶ Press
- To copy/move to created sub folders, select a folder ▶ Press

5 Select *Copy here..* or *Move here..* and press

- Note** ▶
- If a copy protected file is included in the selected files, only the remaining files are copied.
 - Files copied or moved to Memory Card may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
 - Name of copied or moved file may change when the same name already exists in the folder.

Using Files

Use Data Folder files as Wallpaper, Phone Book Picture, ringtone and ringvideo.

- **Set as Wallpaper, Add to Ph.Book, Set as Ring Video** and **Set as Ringtone** appear only for compatible files.
- Some files may not be used depending on the size.

Note ▶ Some copy protected files (→ or ↘) cannot be used even if **Set as Wallpaper, Add to Ph.Book, Set as Ring Video** or **Set as Ringtone** appears.

Wallpaper

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select Pictures, DCIM, Flash® or Other Documents and press**

▶ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press

- 2 Select a file and press** **Options**

- 3 Select Set as Wallpaper and press**

▶ For images smaller or larger than Display, select **Centred, Full Screen** or **Fit Image** ▶ Press
 ▶ For Display size images or **Centred**, use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.

- 4 Press**

Wallpaper is set.

Saving to Phone Book

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select Pictures, Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtone and press**

- 2 Select a file and press** **Options**

- 3 Select Add to Ph.Book and press**

▶ For more, perform Step 4 in "Saving from Call Log" on P.4-8.

Ringvideo & Ringtone

Assign video or sound file as ringvideo or ringtone for Voice Calls.

Ringvideo

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Videos

- 1 Select a file and press** **Options**

- 2 Select Set as Ring Video and press**

Ringtone

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select **Ring Songs·Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtone** and press
- 2 Select a file and press **Options**
- 3 Select **Set as Ringtone** and press

S! Mail Attachments

Attach files to S! Mail from Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press
- 2 Select a file and press **Options**
- 3 Select **Send** and press
- 4 Select **As Message** and press
 - For large JPEG images, select attachment size ► Press
- 5 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.13-8)

Printing Images

Connect handset to a printer via Bluetooth® and print JPEG/PNG images.

- Use a Bluetooth®-compatible printer.
- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select **Pictures, DCIM or Other Documents** and press
 - To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ► Press
- 2 Select a still image and press **Options**
- 3 Select **Print** and press
- 4 Select **Via Bluetooth** and press

Device search starts.
- 5 Select a device and press
 - When requested, enter passcode ► Press
 - When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ► Press
- 6 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set and printing starts.

 - When printing completes, printer stops automatically.
 - To cancel, press **Cancel**.

Editing Still Images

Changing Image Size

Resize Pictures folder images for Wallpaper, Alarm, etc.

- Alternatively, crop image for size or zoom in/out on portions. (File size changes when images are resized.)
- **Picture Editor** appears only for compatible files.

Resize to Preset Size

Main Menu  Data Folder  Pictures  Select a file  Options
  Edit  Picture Editor  Resize

1 Select from *To Wallpaper to Alarm* and press

A rectangle appears on the image (except for *To Wallpaper* and *Power On/Off*).

Wallpaper	W 480 x H 640 dots
Power On/Off	W 480 x H 640 dots
For Incoming Call	W 352 x H 288 dots
Alarm	W 480 x H 208 dots



For Incoming Call

2 Use to specify display area

- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
-  To zoom in/out, press  **Resize**  Press  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)
-  To start over from size selection, press .

3 Press

4 Press **Save**

5 Enter name and press

6 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Cropping Images

Main Menu  Data Folder  Pictures  Select a file  Options
  Edit  Picture Editor  Resize

1 Select *Cut* and press

2 Use to move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop and press

3 Use to move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop and press

 To cancel, press   Start over from Step 1

4 Use to specify display area

- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
-  To zoom in/out, press  **Resize**  Press  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)
-  To cancel, press   Start over from Step 1

5 Press

6 Press **Save**

7 Enter name and press

8 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Visual Effects (Retouch)

Dress up images with pre-loaded visual effects.

- Apply to W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images including Continuous Shoot images.
- **Picture Editor** appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ Select a file ▶ Options (Ⓜ) ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor ▶ Retouch

1 Select an effect and press

- Retouch Effects:

Sepia	Renders image in sepia tone
Sparkling	Adds sparkling effect to bright portions of image
Ripples	Superimposes widening rings over image
Tile	Adds a brick frame around image
Emboss	Renders image in black and white relief
Oil Painting	Renders image as a blurred image
Clear Frame	Adds a transparent 3D frame around image
Round Frame	Adds a round, opaque frosting around image
Soft Frame	Adds a soft, opaque edged frame around image
Zigzag Frame	Adds a jagged edged frame around image

■ To start over, press .

2 Press

3 Press Save

4 Enter name and press

5 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Note ▶ Edited images may be too large to save or send via S! Mail.

Adding Text & Stamps

Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ Select a file ▶ Options (Ⓜ) ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor

1 Adding Text

1 Select Paste and press

■ To specify colours, press Colour ▶ Select text colour ▶ Press ▶ Select outline colour or no outline ▶ Press ▶ Press Done

2 Select Free Text and press

■ To enter the date, select **Date** ▶ Press ▶ Skip ahead to Step 2

3 Enter text and press

- Enter up to 16 characters.
- Alternatively, use Scan Code/Text Scanner to insert text.

Adding Stamps

1 Select Stamp and press

2 Select a stamp and press

■ To change the stamp, press .

2 Use to move text or stamp to target location and press

■ To specify colours, press Colour ▶ Select text colour ▶ Press ▶ Select outline colour or no outline ▶ Press ▶ Press Done

3 Press Save

4 Enter name and press

5 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Face Arrange

Make smiley, angry or sad faces.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Face Arrange may not fit all images. Adjust position and size as required (see right).
- **Picture Editor** appears only for compatible files.

Main Menu

▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ *Select a file* ▶ Options
 (📧) ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor ▶ Face Arrange

1 Select a type and press

- Face Arrange Types:

Collage: Right-half	Copies right side of face onto left side
Collage: Left-half	Copies left side of face onto right side
Grin	Pulls eyes down & mouth up
Mad	Pulls eyes up & mouth down
Sad	Pulls eyes & mouth down
Big Eyes	Adds graphic eyes
Burning Eyes	Adds flames in the eyes
Crying	Adds tears
Aristocrat	Adds a monocle and moustache
Angry Mark	Adds a stress mark to face

 To check current positions of targets, press  **Parts**.

- Press  to return.

 To start over, press .

2 Press 

3 Press  **Save**

4 Enter name and press 

5 Select a location and press 

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Note ▶ When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Face Arrange Position

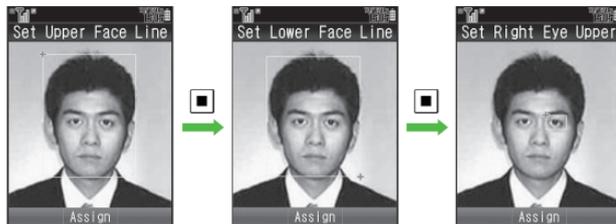
Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image. Changes apply to the current image only.

1 In Step 1 on the left, press  **Parts**

2 Press  **Modify**

A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

3 Set the face line



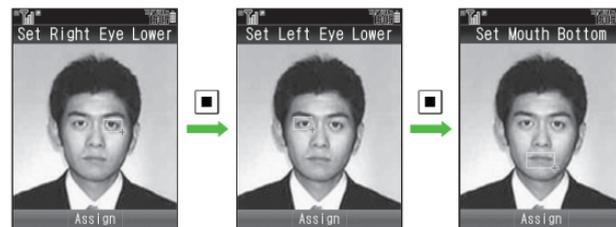
Use $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ to move
+ to the upper
left corner

Use $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ to move
+ to the lower
right corner

Face line is set

To start over, press $\left[\text{CLEAR/BACK} \right]$.

4 Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way



Eye (Right of Image)

Eye (Left of Image)

Mouth

- When finished, all the targets appear.
 - To readjust targets, start over from Step 2 on P.8-14.
- To restore the original positions, press $\left[\text{CLEAR/BACK} \right]$. (Not available after setting mouth position.)

5 Press $\left[\square \right]$

6 Choose Yes and press $\left[\square \right]$

7 Select a location and press $\left[\square \right]$

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted, and Face Arrange menu returns.

- Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Additional Picture Effects

Picture Editor appears only for compatible files.

Frame Add Frame to JPEG and PNG images

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ Select a file ▶ Options (Ⓜ) ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor ▶ Frame

Select a frame ▶ Press $\left[\square \right]$ ▶ Press $\left[\square \right]$ ▶ Press $\left[\text{Y} \right]$ ▶ Save ▶ Enter name ▶ Press $\left[\square \right]$ ▶ Select a location ▶ Press $\left[\square \right]$

To change the frame, press $\left[\text{CLEAR/BACK} \right]$ before assigning it.

Rotate Rotate images

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ Select a file ▶ Options (Ⓜ) ▶ Edit ▶ Picture Editor ▶ Rotate

Select a type ▶ Press $\left[\square \right]$ ▶ Press $\left[\square \right]$ ▶ Press $\left[\text{Y} \right]$ ▶ Save ▶ Enter name ▶ Press $\left[\square \right]$ ▶ Select a location ▶ Press $\left[\square \right]$

To start over from type selection, press $\left[\text{CLEAR/BACK} \right]$ before second press of $\left[\square \right]$.

**File Format/
File Size**

Convert file format and change file size

Main Menu

► *Data Folder* ► *Pictures* ► *Select a file* ►
Options (F10) ► *Edit* ► *Picture Editor* ► *File Format*

Converting File Format

Select **File Format** ► Press ► Select a format ►
 Press ► Press ► Press **Save** ► Enter
 name ► Press ► Select a location ► Press

- Changing file format may affect file size and image quality.

Changing File Size

Select **File Size** ► Press ► Select a size ► Press
 ► Press ► Press **Save** ► Enter name ►
 Press ► Select a location ► Press

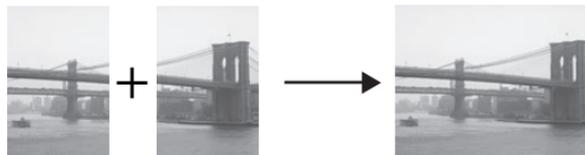
- Changing file size may affect image quality.

Cancelling Effects

- Before saving/adding an effect, select **Undo** ► Press
 - To restore effect immediately after cancelling, select **Redo** ► Press

Panorama Images

Combine two still images into one.



Select two images

Merge Panorama

Panorama Image Effects:

Standard	Applicable to all kinds of shots
Near View	Best suited for close-up shots with parallax correction
Document	Use for images with text

- Use JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 and W 120 x H 160 dots/W 160 x H 120 dots.
- Some portions may be cropped to adjust two images to the same size.
- The result may not be satisfactory if colour tones are different between two images.

1 Select Merge Panorama and press

Left image is set.

- **Merge Panorama** is selectable only for compatible files.

2 Select **and press**
3 Select another image and press

Two images are set.

- If the image is too large or too small, select another.

4 Select EFFECT and press
5 Select from Standard to Document and press

To check images, select either ▶

Press

- Press **ESC** to return.

To change images, select one ▶

Press ▶ Press **Ⓜ** **Change** ▶

Select an image ▶ Press

To switch the positions, press **Ⓜ** **Flip**.

6 Press **Save**
7 Press
8 Enter name and press
9 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.



Merge Panorama Window

Split Screen

Combine up to four reduced images into one.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Images are placed in the upper left, upper right, lower left and lower right in numerical order.



Split Image

1 Select SplitPicture 480x640 or SplitPicture 240x320 and press

Upper left image is set.

2 Select **and press**
3 Select an image and press

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to add images

- In Step 2, select ③ or ④.

To preview Split Picture, press **Options**

➔ Select **View Composite** ➔ Press

■ Press to return.

To change images, select one ➔

Press ➔ Press **Change** ➔

Select an image ➔ Press

To delete images, select one ➔

Press **Options** ➔ Select **Remove** ➔ Press ➔ Choose

Yes ➔ Press



Split Picture Preview

5 Press **Save**

6 Enter name and press

7 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Memory Card

810SH and 811SH are compatible with microSD™ Memory Card.

- Format a new microSD™ Memory Card for use with handset (see **P.8-21**).
- To learn how to save a particular file to Memory Card, refer to that section of the manual.
- Use the supplied Memory Card Adapters to use microSD™ Memory Cards on SD™/miniSD™ Memory Card-compatible PCs and printers.

Keep Memory Card out of children's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.

- Note** ➤
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
 - microSD™ Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

- Tip** ➤ To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended microSD™ Memory Cards. For information on compatibility with microSD™ Memory Cards, access the following Website:
- **From Handset**
Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site (Japanese only)
 - **From PC**
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html
(SHARP ケータイ daSH is available in Japanese only.)

Precautions

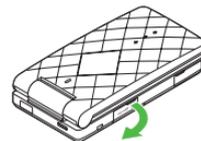
- To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended microSD™ Memory Cards.
- Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card or Memory Card Adapter. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Use an oil-based felt pen to write on Memory Card. Using a pencil or ballpoint pen may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Do not expose Memory Card to direct sunlight or excessive heat (e.g. inside vehicles, etc.).
- Do not expose Memory Card to static electricity or electrical noise.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust or high humidity.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

Inserting & Removing Memory Card

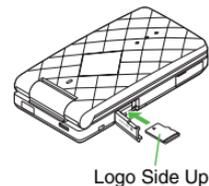
Inserting

Turn handset power off.

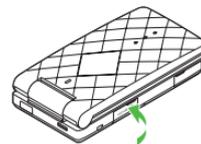
1 Open cover



2 With logo side up, insert card until it clicks



3 Close cover

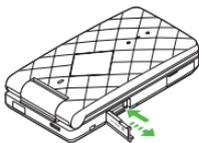


Removing

Turn handset power off.

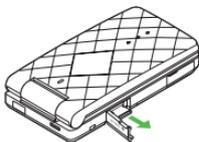
1 Open cover and gently push down on card

- With a light push, card pops out.

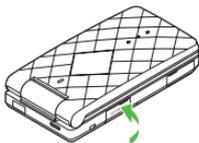


2 Remove card

- Using the notch on its edge, pull card straight out.



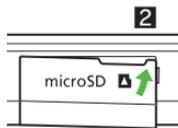
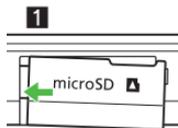
3 Close cover



Closing Cover

1 Slide cover as shown

2 Push in cover until it clicks



- Note** ▶
- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
 - When  appears, Memory Card may not be connected properly; reinsert the card.
 - Do not insert other objects into Memory Card slot; may damage handset/card.
 - Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.

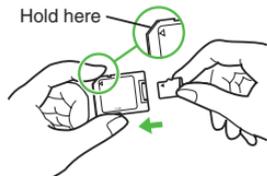
- Tip** ▶ Insert a Memory Card and turn handset power on. Standby appears. Memory Card load times vary by card size and the amount of information saved.

Memory Card Adapters

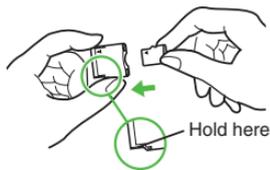
Use included adapters to use microSD™ Memory Card with SD™ or miniSD™ Memory Card compatible devices.

Mounting

Insert microSD™ Memory Card into Memory Card Adapter as shown (printed side up).



micro SD™ to SD™
Memory Card Adapter



microSD™ to miniSD™
Memory Card Adapter

Removing

Holding Memory Card Adapter steady, use notch on bottom edge of microSD™ Memory Card to pull it free.

Note ▶ Hold Memory Card Adapter as shown above. Pressing the printed side may damage Memory Card Adapter.

Note ▶

- Do not insert microSD™ Memory Card into PCs or other devices without Memory Card Adapter. Damage to devices or Memory Card may result. Remove microSD™ Memory Card and Memory Card Adapter together. Removing card alone may cause malfunctions.
- Some devices may not be compatible with microSD™ Memory Cards used with Memory Card Adapter.

Format Card

When using a new microSD™ Memory Card, format it on handset for use with handset before trying to save files, etc.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶ Format Card

1 Choose Yes and press

Offline Mode is set.

When handset is connected to the Network, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

2 Enter Handset Code and press

3 Choose Yes and press

- Note** ▶
- Before formatting a Memory Card, make sure there is no important information saved on the card. Format Card deletes all files from Memory Card.
 - Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting.
 - An improperly formatted Memory Card may not function as it should with 810SH or 811SH.

Backup & Restore

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset in case of accidental loss/alteration of data.

- All contents are copied to Memory Card as a single file. (File name is the date of transfer.)
- The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:
 - Received Msg.
 - Drafts
 - Sent Messages
 - Templates
 - Phone Book
 - Contact Groups
 - Calendar
 - Tasks
 - Text Templates
 - Bookmarks
 - User Dictionary
 - My Pictograms
 - Content Keys
- Templates and My Pictograms are not copied as a single file.
- Unsent Messages are not transferable.
- Select an item to back up or transfer all at once.

- Tip** ▶
- Copy handset entries as backups, share information between microSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or transfer entries to a newly purchased handset.

Precautions

- Backup/Restore is not available when battery is low or while handset is in use.
- Transmissions are blocked during Backup or Restore.
- When restoring data from Memory Card, select an item; when prompted, delete corresponding data on handset to proceed.
- Some items may not be transferable. Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- When handset or Memory Card memory is low, entries may not transfer correctly.
- Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are backed up. When restored, Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.
- Large Bookmarks may not restore correctly.

- Phone Book entry Picture settings may be lost depending on image; copy images separately and re-assign to entries after Phone Book is restored.
- S! Mail Notices are restored as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- To access backed up content (excluding Templates and My Pictograms) restore it to handset.
- Use Backup and Restore for Content Keys.
 - Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.
 - While Keys are on Memory Card, files are inaccessible.
 - Restoring Keys to handset does not overwrite existing ones.
- Restoring Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.
- Observe the following when transferring data backed up on other SoftBank handsets to handset.
 - Messages may not transfer depending on the size.
 - Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
 - Sky Mail may transfer as S! Mail depending on the SoftBank handset used for backup.
- Observe the following when transferring data backed up on handset to other SoftBank handsets.
 - Messages in Spam Folder are saved as standard received messages.
 - SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved or only the first entered recipient remains if transferred from Drafts.

Handset to Memory Card



1 Enter Handset Code and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set.

3 Select an item and press

For **Select All**, **Phone Book** or **Contents keys** confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press

To cancel, press **Cancel**.

Memory Card to Handset

Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Content Keys).

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Connectivity* (☰) ► *Memory Card* ► *Backup/Restore* ► *Restore*

1 Enter Handset Code and press [■]

2 Choose Yes and press [■]

Offline Mode is set.

3 Select an item and press [■]

- Some items may not be selected.

For **Select All**, select a file ► Press [■] ► Choose **Yes** ► Press [■]

4 Select a file and press [■]

- If there is more than one file, check the date of transfer to select.

Example: *061012XX* indicates the file was transferred on 12 October 2006. (XX: 00 - 99 or aa - zz)

- For **Select All**, repeat Step 4 for each item.

To delete files on Memory Card, select one ► Press [☒] **Delete** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press [■]

5 Choose Yes and press [■]

To cancel, press [⏏] **Cancel**.

For **Select All** and **Contents keys**, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** ► Press [■]

Tip ► For Tasks, due dates that cannot be set on handset are overwritten as **No limit**.

Additional Functions

Memory Status Check Memory Card memory status

Main Menu ► *Data Folder* ► *Memory Status*

Select Memory Card ► **Press** [■]

- A portion of Memory Card is reserved for storing copyright information, etc.

SD Local Contents Open HTML files on Memory Card to access Internet sites

■ Available only when HTML files are saved on Memory Card.

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Connectivity* (☰) ► *Memory Card* ► *SD Local Contents*

Select a title ► **Press** [■]

- HTML files for SD Local Contents are saved in PRIVATE/ MYFOLDER/Local Contents folder when viewed on PCs.

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is a standard specification for requesting prints from digital cameras. Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

- DPOF does not support images obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.
- If Memory Card capacity becomes insufficient while in use, a warning message appears. Delete files and try again.
- For printing procedures, see the printer manual.

Selecting Images & Prints

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶ DPOF ▶ Number of Copies ▶ For Each Pictures

1 Select a folder and press

Thumbnails appear.

2 Use to select an image and press **Count**

- To open images, select one ▶ Press 
- Press  to return.

3 Enter a number of copies to print (00 - 99) and press

- To return, press  ▶ Press 
- To cancel, enter **00** ▶ Press 

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other images

5 Press **Done**

- Note** ▶
- DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.
 - Some settings may not be supported depending on the printer or printing services.
 - Process may take a while if print settings are made for many images.
 - If image files are deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, print settings change. Perform Reset Settings (see **P.8-26**) and start over with settings.

Print Settings

For All Pictures Apply a number to all DCF images to print the same number of copies

Default 0 Copy each

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶ DPOF ▶ Number of Copies ▶ For All Pictures

Enter a number (01 - 99) ▶ Press 

Add Date Add dates to prints

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶ DPOF ▶ Settings ▶ Add Date

Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press 

Index Print

Create Index Print (a print with thumbnails)

Default: Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶
DPOF ▶ Settings ▶ Index Print

Choose **On (require)** or **Off** ▶ Press

Check Settings

View current print settings

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶
DPOF

Select **Check Settings** ▶ Press

Reset Settings

Reset DPOF settings

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶
DPOF

Select **Reset Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶
Press

Additional Settings

Mode Settings

Activate Normal, Manner, Drive or Original mode to change multiple handset settings at one time; each mode offers a basket of defaults tailored to a particular usage pattern.

Activating a Mode

Mode Settings Select from four modes

Default Normal

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☰) ► *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ► Press

Customising Modes

Customise Manner, Drive or Original in Mode Settings. To customise Normal, see **P.9-12** "Sounds & Alerts".

Tip ► Volume settings are fixed in Manner mode. Volume, Vibration and Answer Phone settings are fixed in Drive mode.

Edit Customise Volume, Vibration, Event Light and Status Light settings

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☰) ► *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ► Press **Edit** ► Select an item
 ► Press ► Customise settings (see **P.9-12** "Volume", **P.9-13** "Vibration", **P.9-14** "Event Light" and **P.9-14** "Status Light")

Any Key Answer

Activate or cancel Any Key Answer (see **P.2-6**)

Default Drive: On, Manner/Original: Off

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☰) ► *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ► Press **Edit** ► Select Any Key Answer ► Press ► Choose On or Off ► Press

Answer Phone

Activate or cancel Answer Phone for incoming calls in Manner or Original mode

Answer Phone setting is fixed for Drive mode.

Default Manner/Drive: On, Original: Off

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☰) ► *Mode Settings*

Select Manner or Original ► Press **Edit** ►
 Select Answer Phone ► Press ► Choose On or Off ► Press

Reset

Reset

Reset settings for each mode

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Phone Settings* (☰) ► *Mode Settings*

Select a mode ► Press **Reset** ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ► Choose Yes ► Press

Display

Display Settings

Wallpaper

Use Wallpaper to show an image in Standby

Default: White Space

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶
Wallpaper

Preset Sounds

Select **Preset Pictures** ▶ Press ▶ Select an image
▶ Press

Data Folder Images

Select **My Pictures, DCIM, Flash®** or **Other Documents**
▶ Press ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ▶ Press

- For images smaller or larger than Display, select **Centred, Full Screen** or **Fit Image** ▶ Press ▶ Press
- For Display size images or **Centred**, use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.

Cancelling

Choose **Blank** ▶ Press

Restoring Custom Screen Wallpaper

- When Wallpaper is set while Custom Screen is active, Wallpaper takes priority over Custom Screen Wallpaper. (Custom Screen remains active.) To restore Custom Screen Wallpaper, follow these steps after opening Wallpaper menu.

Select **Custom Screen** ▶ Press ▶ Press

- Note** ▶
- Some images may be incompatible/not appear correctly.
 - When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Wallpaper may not appear.
 - Files in My Pictograms are not selectable.

Tip ▶ Using Wallpaper shortens Battery Time.

System Graphics

Use images for Power On/Off, incoming calls and Alarm windows

Default: Power On/Power Off: Preset Animation
Voice Call/Video Call/Alarm: Pattern 1

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶
System Graphics

Power On/Power Off

Select **Power On** or **Power Off** ▶ Press ▶ Select
Preset Animation, My Pictures, DCIM, Flash® or
Other Documents ▶ Press

- For **My Pictures, DCIM, Flash®** or **Other Documents**, select an image ▶ Press ▶ Press

Incoming Calls/Alarm

Select **Voice Call, Video Call** or **Alarm** ▶ Press ▶
Select from **Pattern 1 to Pattern 3, My Pictures, DCIM, Flash®, Other Documents** or **Custom Screen**
▶ Press

- For **My Pictures, DCIM, Flash®** or **Other Documents**, select an image ▶ Press ▶ Press
- If a rectangle appears for images in My Pictures, DCIM or Other Documents, use to specify display area and press .

Note ▶ Images may not appear for incoming calls/Alarm while messaging with an S! Application paused.

Restoring Custom Screen System Graphics

- When System Graphics are set while Custom Screen is active, System Graphics take priority over Custom Screen System Graphics. (Custom Screen remains active.) To restore to Custom Screen System Graphics for **Voice Call**, **Video Call** or **Alarm**, follow these steps after opening the corresponding menu.
Select Custom Screen ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Press** 

- Note** ▶
- Ringtone and ringvideo images for Sounds & Alerts may take priority over System Graphics for incoming calls.
 - Ringtone, ringvideo and Picture images for Phone Book entries take priority over System Graphics for incoming calls with caller ID.

Font Settings Change font size/weight for menus, text entry, mail messages and the Internet
 Default Font Size: Standard, Font Weight: Normal

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings*  ▶ *Display* ▶ *Font Settings*

Font Size

Select Font Size ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Select an item** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Select a size** ▶ **Press** 

Font Weight

Select Font Weight ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Select a weight** ▶ **Press** 

- Selected font weight applies to all windows.

Note ▶ Some menu items, function names, etc. differ by font size.

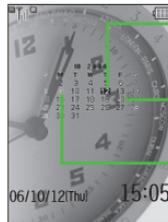
Tip ▶ Some windows may not support Font Settings.

Clock/Calendar Show or hide Clock/Calendar in Standby
 Default Clock (M)

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings*  ▶ *Display* ▶ *Standby Display* ▶ *Clock/Calendar*

Select a type ▶ **Press** 

Calendar Contents



Current Date

- Highlighted

Scheduled Date

- Underlined (see P.11-2 "Calendar" for schedules)

Holiday

- Appears in red

Clock + 1 Month

- Note** ▶
- Calendar appears on Wallpaper.
 - Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of September 2006. (Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day are gazetted on 1 February of the previous year, and thus may differ from dates scheduled on handset.)

Tip ▶ When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Calendar may not appear.

Show Indicators

Show or hide indicators/Soft Keys in Standby

Default>Status Area: On, Softkey Area: Off

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Display → Standby Display → Show Indicators

Select **Status Area** or **Softkey Area** → Press → Choose **On** or **Off** → Press

Show Operator Name

Show or hide the name of your service provider (**SoftBank**, etc.) in Standby

Default:Off

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Display → Standby Display → Show Operator Name

Choose **On** (name appears) or **Off** → Press

Vivid Mode

Select an image enhancement option

Default:Standard

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Display → Vivid Mode

Select **Standard**, **Vivid**, **Sharpness** or **Dynamic** → Press

Tip ▶ Setting applies to still images viewed in Standby and video played via Video Player/streaming.

Greeting Message

Create a short text message to appear on Display each time handset power is activated

Default:Off

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Display → Greeting Message

Edit Message

Select **Edit Message** → Press → Enter a message → Press

- Enter up to 10 characters.

Switch On/Off

Select **Switch On/Off** → Press → Choose **On** or **Off** → Press

Dial Number

Change font of numbers entered in Standby

Default:Pattern 1

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Display → Dial Number

Select **Pattern 1**, **Pattern 2** or **Pattern 3** → Press

Standby Live Monitor

In Standby, view breaking news in Live Monitor List (see P.14-15).

1 Press

The latest news titles scroll.

- While titles scroll, press to open title list (see P.14-14).

Press to exit.



Standby Live Monitor

Standby Live Monitor Settings

Target News Select whether to scroll all titles or unread only

Press  ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Standby Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Target News** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Unread & Read or Only Unread** ➔ Press 

Default: Unread & Read

News speed Select scroll speed

Press  ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Standby Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select News speed** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Fast, Normal or Slow** ➔ Press 

Default: Normal

Display Priority Select whether to return to Standby showing Clock/Calendar or Live Monitor

Press  ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Standby Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Display Priority** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Live! Monitor or Clock-Calendar** ➔ Press 

Default: Clock-Calendar

Show Image Show or hide image

Press  ➔ **Select Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Live Monitor** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Standby Settings** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Show Image** ➔ Press  ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔ Press 

Default: On

Language Setting

Language Switch handset interface between Japanese and English

Main Menu ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Phone Settings** (☎) ➔ **言語選択**

Select Automatic, English or 日本語 ➔ Press 

- For **Automatic**, interface language switches according to language information on USIM Card.

Custom Screens

Download and install applications that load single-themed handset Wallpaper, menu windows, indicators, ringtones and more, all at the same time.

- In addition to preloaded Custom Screens, use Custom Screens downloaded via the Internet.
- See P.9-8 to use preloaded Custom Screens (**Pattern 1**, **Pattern 2** and **Pattern 3**).
- **カスタモご紹介** (☎) in handset Data Folder (Custom Screens) is a doorway to **カスタモ** Mobile Internet site offering Custom Screens for 810SH and 811SH.
- **Pattern 1** is installed by default.

Downloading Custom Screens

To download Custom Screens, open handset Data Folder (Custom Screens).

- Some Custom Screens are fee-based.
- To use fee-based Custom Screens, download Custom Screen Keys to handset (see right).
- Custom Screens and Custom Screen Keys are downloaded via the Internet. Make sure signal is strong.
- Custom Screens can also be downloaded via **カスタモ** (<http://www.custamo.com/>) using a PC.

Note ▶ Read information (Custom Screen Key price, expiry date, etc.) on Custom Screen download page.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

1 Select Download Custom Screens and press

Handset connects to the Internet and **カスタモ** appears.

- ▶ To view a list of downloadable Custom Screens first, select **カスタモご紹介** (≡) ▶ Press ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

2 Download a Custom Screen

- Read through information on the site.
- On PCs, download Custom Screens to the following Memory Card directory.
 - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Custom Screens

Purchasing Custom Screen Keys

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select Custom Screens and press

Available Custom Screens appear.

- Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators:

Key Found	→	Key Not Found	↗
-----------	---	---------------	---

- appears for the current Custom Screen.
- ▶ To switch between handset and Memory Card, press **Options**
 - ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press

2 Select a Custom Screen for which to download the Key and press **Options**

- Select one with .

3 Select Activate and press

- When 100 Content Keys are already downloaded, delete Keys before downloading new ones.

4 Press **Activate**

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.

- Custom Screen Key download page contains the following information:
 - Custom Screen Key price
 - Payment method
 - Terms of service
 - Link to customer enquiry service
- ▶ To cancel, press **Cancel**.

5 Read through terms of service and download Custom Screen Key following online instructions

6 After download, press

Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

Delete Delete Custom Screen and Custom Screen Key

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

Select a Custom Screen ▶ Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press  ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press 

-  To delete the corresponding Custom Screen Key at the same time, choose **Yes** ▶ Press 
 - To cancel, choose **No** ▶ Press 

- Custom Screen Keys cannot be deleted independently.
- Delete **カスタモご紹介** () as needed.

Web Access Access Custom Screen source sites

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

Select a Custom Screen ▶ Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Web Access** ▶ Press 

Custom Screen Setup

Custom Screen setup may take some time. (Pressing  does not cancel setup.)

■ Preset Custom Screens

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings () ▶ Custom Screens ▶ Preset Screens

1 Select **Pattern 1**, **Pattern 2** or **Pattern 3** and press 

2 Select **Icon Menu**, **Horizontal** or **Vertical** and press 

■ Custom Screens in Data Folder

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select **Custom Screens** and press 

Available Custom Screens appear.

(Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators: see P.9-7)

-  To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options**
 - ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press 

2 Select a Custom Screen and press 

- Custom Screens with  cannot be set.
- Select a Custom Screen and press  **Options** to open properties, change file names or copy/move to other folders (see P.8-6, P.8-8, P.8-9).

3 Press 

Custom Screen is set and Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

- Note** ▶
- Some Custom Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.
 - Custom Screen setup may fail when battery is low or depending on content.

Tip ▶ Once installed, Custom Screen remains active even after Memory Card is removed or replaced with another.

Light Settings

Backlight

Select Display and Keypad Backlight illumination time or Display Brightness

Default Time Out: 15 seconds, Brightness: Level 2

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Backlight

Backlight Illumination Time

Select **Time Out** ▶ Press ▶ Select time ▶ Press

To disable Backlight, choose **Off** ▶ Press

Display Brightness

Select **Brightness** ▶ Press ▶ Use to adjust level ▶ Press

Tip ▶ Keypad light Brightness is fixed.

Display Saving

Select a period of inactivity after which Display turns off

Default 2 minutes

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Display Saving

Select a period ▶ Press

Tip ▶ During a call, Display turns off/Backlight turns off automatically after Display Saving/Backlight time. To turn it back on, press a key other than . Even when Display Saving is set to **Always On**, Display turns off after approximately five minutes of Call Time.

External Display Settings

Duration

Select active time for External Display

810SH only.
Default 15 seconds

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ External Display ▶ Duration

Select time ▶ Press

To disable External Display, choose **Off** ▶ Press

Switch On/Off

Activate or deactivate External Display

811SH only.
Default On

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ External Display ▶ Switch On/Off

Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press

Backlight Select Backlight illumination time for External Display ■ 811SH only.
Default: 15 seconds

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ External Display ▶ Backlight

Select time ▶ Press
 To disable Backlight, choose **Off** ▶ Press

LCD Contrast Adjust External Display Contrast from nine levels Default: Level 5

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ External Display ▶ LCD Contrast

Use to adjust level ▶ Press

Display Date & Time Change External Display Clock view Default: Large Clock

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ External Display ▶ Display Date & Time

Select a type ▶ Press
 • With handset closed, press to toggle Clock view. (Display Date & Time setting is not affected.)

Caller Display Show or hide caller's number or name on External Display Default: On

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ External Display ▶ Caller Display

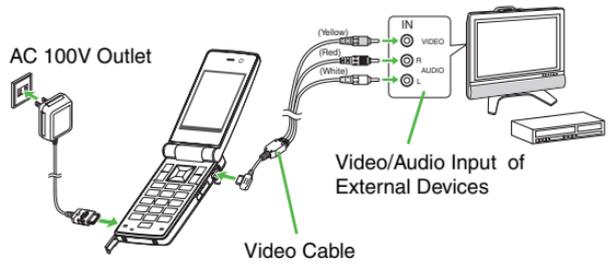
Choose On (show) or Off ▶ Press

Viewing Images on External Devices

Use the supplied Video Cable to connect handset to a TV, VCR, etc. to view images or exportable S! Applications saved on handset/Memory Card.

- Exportable Sources (some images and sounds will not play on external devices):
 - S! Applications
 - Images in Data Folder
 - Video Player
 - Video Call
- When Video Player, S! Applications or Video Call images are viewed on external devices, images do not appear on handset Display.
- Not available when handset is closed.

Connecting to External Devices



Precautions

Observe the following when connecting TV, VCR, etc. and handset:

- Turn off the device before connecting/disconnecting Video Cable.
- Connect Video Cable only to the video/audio inputs of the device and VIDEO OUT Port of handset. Video Cable is designed exclusively for 810SH and 811SH.
- Plug in firmly. To disconnect, grasp the plug and pull gently.
- Do not pull, twist or bend Video Cable to avoid damaging the cable and handset VIDEO OUT Port.

Activating Video Output

- Connect handset to device before activating Video Output.
- Video Output is **Off** by default.
- While Video Output is in use, control the volume on the connected device (except for Video Calls). Turn down the volume before disconnecting from handset.

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶
Video Output ▶ Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** and press

▶ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press

2 Open exportable images, video, etc.

- When exporting S! Application, video or Video Call images, press to toggle display between device and handset.
 - Video restarts each time display is switched.
- Exiting Video Output:
 - Press (Video Calls end).
 - Alternatively, press for video.

Switch Display Size

- Activate Video Output and follow these steps.
Select Display Size ▶ Press ▶ **Select Standard or Large** ▶ Press

Rotate Image

- Activate Video Output and follow these steps.
Select Rotation Setting ▶ Press ▶ **Select from No Rotation to 180°** ▶ Press
- Pictures folder images, S! Applications and Video Call images cannot be rotated.

Note ▶ Images may be noisy or distorted depending on the device. Images may be cropped vertically when Display Size is **Large**.

Tip ▶ Battery drains faster when Video Output is in use.

Selecting TV System

TV System is **NTSC** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Video Output ▶ TV System

1 Select **NTSC** or **PAL** and press **■**

Note ▶ Use **NTSC** in Japan. Outside Japan, select either according to available TV system.

Sounds & Alerts

Customising Handset Responses

Volume Set volume level for handset functions

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ Volume

Select an item ▶ Press **■** ▶ Use **⏏** to adjust level ▶ Press **■**

- Select from five levels. When **Increasing Volume** is set, volume increases every four seconds from Level 1 to Level 5. **Increasing Volume** is not available for **General Volume**.

Ringtone/ videos Set ringtones or ringvideos for incoming communications

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ Ringtone/videos

Assign Tone in Preset Sounds

Select **For Voice Call** or **For Video Call** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Preset Sounds** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select a tone ▶ Press **■**

- For items other than **For Voice Call** or **For Video Call**, select **Assign Tone** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Preset Sounds** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select a tone ▶ Press **■**
- To play tones, select one and press **⏏** **Play**.
 - Press **⏏** **Stop** to stop.

Assign Tone in Data Folder

Select **For Voice Call** or **For Video Call** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Ring Songs-Tones or Music** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **■**

- For items other than **For Voice Call** or **For Video Call**, select **Assign Tone** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Ring Songs-Tones or Music** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **■**
- To play files, select one and press **⏏** **Play**.
 - Press **⏏** **BACK** to stop.

Assign Video or Flash® Ringtone

Select **For Voice Call** or **For Video Call** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Video or Flash® Ringtone** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **■**

- For **For New Message** or **Delivery Report**, select **Assign Tone** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select **Video or Flash® Ringtone** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select a file ▶ Press **■**
- To play files, select one and press **⏏** **Play**.
 - Press **⏏** **BACK** to stop.

Duration (Not Available for Voice/Video Call)

Select an item other than *For Voice Call* or *For Video Call* → Press → Select *Duration* → Press → Enter time (01 - 99 seconds) → Press

Restoring Custom Screen Ringtone/Ringvideo

- When ringtone/ringvideo is set while Custom Screen is active, ringtone/ringvideo takes priority over Custom Screen ringtone/ringvideo. (Custom Screen remains active.)
To restore Custom Screen ringtone/ringvideo, select **Custom Screen** instead of **Preset Sounds**, etc. and press .

- Note** ▶
- Some files may not be usable.
 - Default ringtone/ringvideo may sound/play for Voice Calls when downloading files, streaming, etc.
 - S! Application set as Screensaver that also responds to incoming communications may take priority.
 - Video files over 3 MB and 3GPP video cannot be set as ringvideo.

Vibration

Handset vibrates for incoming communications

Default: Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Sounds & Alerts → Vibration

Activating/Deactivating

Select an item → Press → Select **Switch On/Off** → Press → Select **On, Link to Sound or Off** → Press

- **Link to Sound:** Handset vibrates only when ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.

Vibration Pattern

Select an item → Press → Select **Vibration Pattern** → Press → Select from **Pattern 1 to Pattern 5** → Press

- To check vibration patterns, select one and press **Check**.
 - Press **Stop** to stop.

Note ▶ Disable vibration when charging.

Event Light

Set Small Light illumination for incoming communications

Default On (Live Monitor: Off), Light Colour: Green

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ Event Light

Activating/Deactivating

Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select **Switch On/Off**

▶ Press ▶ Select **On, Link to Sound or Off** ▶

Press

- **Link to Sound:** Small Light flashes only when ringtone is a compatible SMAF file.

Selecting Light Colour

Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select **Light Colour** ▶

Press ▶ Select a colour ▶ Press

Status Light

Set Small Light illumination for missed incoming communications

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ Status Light

Activating/Deactivating

Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select **Switch On/Off**

▶ Press ▶ Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press

Selecting Light Colour

Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select **Light Colour** ▶

Press ▶ Select a colour ▶ Press

- Default Settings:

	Switch On/Off	Light Colour
For Missed Call	On	Blue
For New Message	On	Green
For Answer Phone	Off	White
out Missed Calls	On	Blue
Bluetooth Notif.	Off	Yellow
Delivery Report	Off	Green

Customising System Sounds**Keypad Tones**

A tone sounds when a key is pressed

Default Touch Tone

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ System Sounds ▶ Keypad Tones

Assign Touch Tone

Select **Touch Tone** ▶ Press

Assign a Pattern

Select **Pattern 1, Pattern 2 or Pattern 3** ▶ Press

■ To check patterns, select one and press **Play**.

■ Press **Stop** to stop.

Disable Keypad Tone

Choose **Off** ▶ Press

Other System Sounds

Select tones for errors, power on/off, handset open/close, or charging completion; set duration

Default Warning Tone: Sound Effect 11 (0.5 seconds)
Power On/Off Sound: Off (3 seconds)
Handset Open: Sound Effect 14 (1 second)
Handset Close: Sound Effect 15 (1 second)
Charge Full: Off (2 seconds)

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌘) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ System Sounds

Sound Patterns in Preset Sounds

Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select Tone or Sound ▶ Press ▶ Select Preset Sounds ▶ Press ▶

Select a tone ▶ Press

■ To play tones, select one and press Play .

■ Press Stop to stop.

Sound Patterns in Data Folder

Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select Tone or Sound ▶ Press ▶ Select Ring Songs/Tones ▶ Press ▶ Select a file ▶ Press

■ To play files, select one and press Play .

■ Press Back to stop.

Duration

Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select Duration ▶ Press ▶ Select/enter time ▶ Press

Disable Tone

Select an item ▶ Press ▶ Select Tone or Sound ▶ Press ▶ Choose Off ▶ Press

Surround

Activate or deactivate Speaker surround

Default On

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌘) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ Surround

Select On, Link to Sound or Off ▶ Press

Additional Sound Settings

Ringer Output

Set ringer source when using Headphones, etc.

Default Earphone/Speaker

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌘) ▶ Ringer Output

Select **Earphone** or **Earphone/Speaker** ▶ Press

- Even if **Earphone** is selected, ringtone sounds from Speaker when Headphones are not connected.

Earpiece

Volume

Setting applies when placing/answering calls

Default Level 3

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌘) ▶ Earpiece Volume

Use to adjust level ▶ Press

Any Key

Answer

Activate or cancel Any Key Answer (see P.2-6)

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌘) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ Any Key Answer

Choose On or Off ▶ Press

Date & Time

See indicated pages for these items.

World Clock	See P.11-14	Alarm	See P.11-11
--------------------	-------------	--------------	-------------

Set Date/Time Set the date and time

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time
▶ Set Date/Time

When Time Format is 24 Hour

Enter the year ▶ Enter the month ▶ Enter the day ▶
Enter the time ▶ Press []

When Time Format is 12 Hour

Enter the year ▶ Enter the month ▶ Enter the day ▶
Enter the time ▶ Use [↓] to select am or pm ▶ Press []

Note ▶

- Entry order varies by Date Format (see right). Use the letters below the entry fields as a guide.
- When removing the battery for replacement, etc., Clock settings remain. However, should the handset go without power for an extended period of time (approximately three days), Clock will need to be reset.

Tip ▶

- The day of the week is set automatically.
- When Clock has not been set, --/-- --:-- appears for date and time in Call Log, etc.
- To correct numbers, use [←] to move cursor and re-enter digits.
- Choose a Clock type or use Calendar for Standby (see P.9-4).

Set Time Zone/Daylight Saving Change Time Zone or activate Daylight Saving

Default Time Zone: Tokyo, Daylight Saving: Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time

Time Zone

Select **Set Time Zone** ▶ Press [] ▶ Use [←] to select a Time Zone ▶ Press []

▶ If your zone is not preset, press [☰] **Custom** ▶ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ▶ Press [] ▶ Use [↓] to select + or - ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter time difference ▶ Press []

Daylight Saving

Select **Daylight Saving** ▶ Press [] ▶ Choose **On** ▶ Press []

▶ To cancel, select **Daylight Saving** ▶ Press [] ▶ Choose **Off** ▶ Press []

• Activate Daylight Saving to advance handset local time by one hour.

Date/Time Format Change date/time format

Default Time Format: 24 Hour, Date Format: Y/M/D

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time

Time Format

Select **Time Format** ▶ Press [] ▶ Select **24 Hour** or **12 Hour** ▶ Press []

Date Format

Select **Date Format** ▶ Press [] ▶ Select **D.M.Y**, **M-D-Y** or **Y/M/D** ▶ Press []

Calendar Format Select whether to start the week on Sunday or Monday

Default Sunday-Saturday

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time
▶ Calendar Format

Select **Sunday-Saturday** or **Monday-Sunday** ▶ Press []

User Dictionary

Entries (Japanese Only)

Save frequently used words/phrases. Assign a reading (keyword) in hiragana to each entry. In text entry windows, enter a reading and convert. Saved words/phrases appear among word suggestions.

- Save up to 100 entries.
- Save up to five words/phrases per reading.

New Entry Save words/phrases to User Dictionary

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary ▶ New Entry

Enter a word/phrase ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Enter a reading (keyword)** ▶ Press [Enter]

- Enter up to 15 characters per word/phrase and eight characters in hiragana per reading.
 - ▶ Alternatively, in other text entry windows, press [Options] ▶ Select **Add to Dictionary** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select the first character of text ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select the end point ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Enter a reading (keyword) ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Press [Enter]

Edit/Delete Edit or delete entries

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary ▶ Edit Dictionary

Edit

Select a word/phrase ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Edit the word/phrase** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Edit reading** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press [Enter]

Delete

Select a word/phrase ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Delete** ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press [Enter]

810SH/811SH Download Dictionary (Japanese Only)

Download specialised 810SH/811SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site (see P.14-9). Activate up to five dictionaries at one time to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among word suggestions.

Acquire Dictionary Activate downloaded dictionary

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary ▶ Acquire Dictionary

Select from Dictionary 1 to Dictionary 5 ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Select a dictionary** ▶ Press [Enter]

- ▶ To replace dictionaries, select one and press [Enter] ▶ Select a dictionary ▶ Press [Enter]

Note ▶ Some dictionary files may not be usable.

Cancel Cancel dictionary

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary ▶ Acquire Dictionary

Select a dictionary ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Select Cancel** ▶ Press [Enter]

Info View dictionary information

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary ▶ Acquire Dictionary

Select a dictionary ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Select Info** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Press [Enter] to exit.

Handset Security

Face Recognition

Activate Face Recognition to lock handset automatically when it is turned on, closed and reopened in Standby or when Display turns back on after shutdown, etc. Match your face in the live camera image against saved portrait to unlock.

Precautions for capturing portrait/scanning face:

- **Make sure your face is clearly visible; facial features may be obscured by hair, coloured glasses, masks, etc.**
- **Face should be lit evenly and brightly (avoid backlight and strong light).**

- Note** ▶
- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank cannot be held liable for misuse or any damages associated with the use of Face Recognition.
 - Handset Code is required to activate/cancel Face Recognition. Changing the code (see **P.9-24**) helps enhance security.
 - S! FeliCa is available even when Face Recognition is active.

Saving User Information

Save a name and portrait as well as a question and an answer to the question. In case recognition fails, enter the answer to unlock handset.

- Save up to five users (with up to five portraits each).
- If no question or answer is saved, enter Handset Code to unlock handset.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (←) ▶ Locks ▶ Face Recognition ▶ User Registration

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press** 
- 2 Select from *User 1 to User 5* and press** 
 -  To edit user information, select a user ▶ Press 
 -  To delete users, select one ▶ Press  **Delete** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press 
- 3 Select *User Name:* and press** 
- 4 Enter name and press** 
- 5 Select *Register Riddle:* and press** 
- 6 Enter a question and press** 
- 7 Select *Register Answer:* and press** 
- 8 Enter the answer and press** 
 - Capture and save portrait if not already saved (see **P.9-19**).
- 9 Press**  **Save** to save

■ Saving Portraits

Save up to five portraits per user. Change location, face angle, accessory, brightness, etc. for each shot.

- Saving multiple portraits increases recognition accuracy. However, security will be compromised.
- A person's portraits can be saved to multiple users; this may increase recognition accuracy.
- Look straight into lens and frame whole face with no expression; adjust face size (may not be saved if too small). Stay still until shooting is completed.
- Follow these steps after Step 8 on P.9-18.

1 Select *Face Image:* and press

2 Select from *Image 1 to Image 5* and press **Capture**

- To overwrite saved portrait, choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
- To delete portraits, select one ➔ Press  **Delete** ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
 - Deleting all portraits cancels Face Recognition.

3 Frame your face on Display and press

- Stay still until shooting is completed.
- If **Cannot save. Please change the shooting condition.** appears, start over from Step 2.

4 Press **Yes**

Portrait is saved.

- To save more, repeat Steps 2 - 4.
- To save user information, press  then  **Save**.

Note ➤ Do not wear a mask when capturing portraits, even for use with **Low(Mask)** (see P.9-21 "Security Level").

■ Activating & Cancelling

- Save a user beforehand.
- Face Recognition is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ➤ *Settings* ➤ *Phone Settings (☰)* ➤ *Locks* ➤ *Face Recognition* ➤ *Switch On/Off*

1 Choose *On* or *Off* and press

2 Enter Handset Code and press

Tip ➤ Activate Face Recognition to lock handset automatically when it is turned on or when Display turns off automatically (e.g. handset is closed in Standby).

Scanning Face

Face Recognition window opens when: handset is turned on; closed in Standby then reopened; Display turns back on after shutdown, etc.

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover of Internal Camera with a soft cloth before use.
- Handset may not lock when Display turns back on with a resumed function window/menu open. Face Recognition window opens when handset returns to Standby.

1 Face the Display

- To show operational tips, select **Panda** in Conductor Setting (see right).
- Handset is unlocked when your face matches saved portrait.

When Face Recognition Fails

■ **The Key operation is locked.** appears. Follow these steps to unlock handset.

Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

- To retry Face Recognition, press **Recog.**

■ When saved question appears, press , enter the answer and press .

- If the answer is incorrect, **The Answer is wrong** appears. Press to re-enter the answer, or follow these steps to unlock handset.

Press → Press → Enter Handset Code →

Press

■ While handset is locked, press to open contact information (see P.9-21 "Report").

- Save contact information first.

Tip ▶ When wearing a mask, set Security Level (see P.9-21) to **Low(Mask)** to make your face recognisable. However, security will be compromised.

Face Recognition Settings

Conductor Setting Show or hide operational tips during recognition

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings → Phone Settings (☺) → Locks → Face Recognition → Conductor Setting

Select **Off**, **Preview**, **Panda** or **Custom Screen** →

Press

Off	<i>The face is being attested. For a while please wait.</i> appears.
Preview	Internal Camera Viewfinder appears for guidance
Panda	Panda graphic appears with operational tips
Custom Screen	Custom Screen (see P.9-6) graphic-based guidance appears

Security Level

Select accuracy level

Default Normal

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Face Recognition ▶ Security Level

Select **High**, **Normal**, **Low** or **Low(Mask)** ▶ Press

High	Unsaved faces are least likely recognised by mistake; your face may be hard to recognise
Normal	Standard recognition accuracy
Low	Your face is most recognisable; unsaved faces are most likely recognised by mistake
Low (Mask)	Handset recognises faces with masks. (Accuracy is equal to that of Low .)

Report

Save contact information to open when Face Recognition fails (see P.9-20)

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Face Recognition ▶ Report

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ▶ Enter contact information ▶ Press

- Enter up to 128 characters.

PIN

For more information on PIN, see P.1-6.

PIN Entry

Select whether to require PIN every time handset is turned on (with USIM Card inserted)

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ PIN Entry ▶ Switch On/Off

Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press ▶ Enter PIN1 ▶ Press

PIN Lock

- PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively. To cancel PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock, follow these steps.

Open a function requiring PIN1 or PIN2 ▶ Enter **Personal Unlocking Key (PUK Code)** ▶ Press ▶ Enter new PIN1 or PIN2 ▶ Press ▶ Re-enter PIN1 or PIN2 ▶ Press

- For information on Personal Unlocking Key (PUK Code), contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.19-28).
- If PUK Code is incorrectly entered ten times, USIM Card is locked. (Count continues even if handset power is turned off.)
- For procedures required to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.19-28).

Change PIN

Change PIN1 or PIN2

■ Activate PIN Entry first.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks

PIN1

Select **PIN Entry** ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select **Change PIN**
 ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter current PIN1 ▶ Press ■ ▶
 Enter new PIN1 ▶ Press ■ ▶ Re-enter new PIN1 ▶
 Press ■

PIN2

Select **Change PIN2** ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter current
 PIN2 ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter new PIN2 ▶ Press ■ ▶
 Re-enter new PIN2 ▶ Press ■

Handset Locks

Handset Lock

Activate Handset Lock to require Handset Code each time handset power is turned on

Default: Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Handset Lock

Choose **On** ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶
 Press ■

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter Handset Code
 ▶ Press ■

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Handset Lock is active. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions

Default: Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Function Lock

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ■

■ To unlock, enter Handset Code in Standby or during a call ▶
 Press ■

- Function Lock remains active even if handset power is deactivated, then reactivated.

When Function Lock is Active

- In Standby, press ☰ for 2+ seconds to deactivate handset power, ■ for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock, 0*#* - 9*#* to enter Handset Code or #*#* to edit Handset Code entry.
- During a call, press ☰ to end the call, press ☰ to show Options, ■ to toggle Loudspeaker on/off or switch Video Call images, ☑ to mute/unmute Microphone, ☰ to switch between callers in Call Waiting, 0*#* - 9*#* to enter Handset Code or #*#* to edit Handset Code entry.
- When a call arrives, press ☰ to show Options. Answer calls by pressing ☰, ■ or keys for Any Key Answer (see P.2-6), or place callers on hold by pressing ☰. Press ☑ to forward incoming calls (when **No Answer** is set for Diverts).

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Function Lock is active. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

Phone Book Lock

Protect Phone Book entries from accidental alteration and restrict access to Phone Book information

Default: Off

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Locks → Phone Book Lock

Choose **On** → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

To cancel, choose **Off** → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

- Enter Handset Code to temporarily cancel Phone Book Lock to access Phone Book entries.

Note ▶ When Phone Book Lock is active, the following Phone Book operations are disabled:

- Searching, saving, editing and dialling, including Speed Dial (see P.4-14).

Fixed Dialling No.

Allow calls only to designated numbers

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Locks → Restrict Modes → Fixed Dialling No.

Activating/Cancelling Fixed Dialling No.

Select **Switch On/Off** → Press → Choose **On** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press → Enter PIN2 → Press

To cancel, choose **Off** → Press → Enter PIN2 → Press

Designating Numbers

Select **Edit Dial List** → Press → Select a list → Press → Enter PIN2 → Press → Select an entry → Press → Edit entry → Press

Editing Lists

Select **Edit Dial List** → Press → Select a list → Press Options → Select **Edit** → Press → Enter PIN2 → Press → Select an entry → Press → Edit entry → Press

Deleting Lists

Select **Edit Dial List** → Press → Select a list → Press Options → Select **Delete** → Press → Enter PIN2 → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Note ▶

- This function is available only for compatible USIM Cards.
- To send SMS to designated numbers, save SMS Centre Number (+819066519300) to Fixed Dialling No. list. (Do not change Centre Number unless instructed to do so.)

Packet Lock

Disable packet transmissions

Default: Off

Main Menu

Settings → Phone Settings (☰) → Locks → Restrict Modes → Packet Lock

Choose **On** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press → Enter PIN2 → Press

To cancel, choose **Off** → Press → Enter PIN2 → Press

Note ▶ This function is available only for compatible USIM Cards.

Opening Secret Entries

Activate Show Secret Data to open Secret entries.

Show
Secret Data

Activate or cancel Show Secret Data

Default: Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶
Show Secret Data

Choose **On** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶
Press

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press

Note ▶ Do not save confidential information in Phone Book/
schedule entries. Handset Code and thus Secret entries
may be compromised.

When Show Secret Data is Off

■ Phone Book Names/Picture images do not appear for calls/
mail from numbers/addresses in Secret entries. Personal
ringtones/ringvideos are disabled. Names for numbers in
Secret entries do not appear in Call Log or list of received
messages.

Changing Handset Code

Chng
Handset Code

Whenever necessary, change Handset Code

Default: 9999

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Chng
Handset Code

Enter current Handset Code ▶ Press ▶ Enter
new Handset Code ▶ Press ▶ Re-enter new
Handset Code ▶ Press

Reset

Reset Settings

Cancel custom settings and return handset
functions to their default settings

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Master Reset
▶ Reset Settings

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶
Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

- Phone Book entries are unaffected.
- A confirmation appears (before entering Handset Code) in the following cases. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.
 - S! Application is active ■ Music Player is active
 - Bluetooth® is active ■ Infrared is active

Note ▶ Some default settings may not be restored.

Reset All

Clear all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Master Reset ▶ Reset All

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]

- A confirmation appears (before entering Handset Code) in the following cases. Choose **Yes** and press [OK] to proceed.
 - S! Application is active
 - Music Player is active
 - Bluetooth® is active
 - Infrared is active

Note ▶

- Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Handset Code returns to the default setting. Reset All deletes downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Appli.
- **カスタム紹介** (☰) in Data Folder (Custom Screens) and S! Applications are restored.
- Reset All is disabled if IC Card (see **P.16-2**) data remains. Delete IC Card data beforehand.

Call Settings

See indicated pages for these items.

Voicemail/Divert	See P.12-4, P.12-2	Show My Number	See P.12-10
Call Waiting	See P.12-5	Call Barring	See P.12-7

International Call

Int'l Prefix

Save frequently used international prefix

Default:0046010

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☰) ▶ Int'l Calling ▶ Int'l Prefix

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter a prefix ▶ Press [OK]

Country Codes

Change, add or delete Country Codes

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☰) ▶ Int'l Calling ▶ Country Codes

Change

Select a country ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Change ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter a country name ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press [OK]

Add

Select <empty> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter a country name ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press [OK]

Delete

Select a country ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Delete ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]

Tip ▶ For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

Auto Add Code

Add a preset country code automatically when placing calls

Default: Off/Country Code: 81 (Japan)

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Int'l Calling ▶ Auto Add Code

Activating/Deactivating

Select **Switch On/Off** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press

Set Country Code

Select **Country Code** ▶ Press ▶ Select a country ▶ Press

To enter a country code, select **Enter Code** in Country Code list ▶ Press ▶ Enter a country code ▶ Press

Note ▶ When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless + is included.

Auto Answer

Set handset to answer Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones or handsfree devices.

When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone (even in Manner mode).

- To avoid unintentional activation, cancel Auto Answer after use.
- Handsfree device Auto Answer tone varies by device.
- Ringtone/Auto Answer Tone Availability:

	Handset	Headphones	Handsfree Devices
Ringtone	Available*	Available	Available
Auto Answer Tone	Available	Available	N/A

*Not available in Manner mode.

Tip ▶ To set handset to answer Video Calls automatically, see P.5-8 "Remote Monitor".

Switch On/Off

Activate or cancel Auto Answer

Default: Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Auto Answer

Enter **Handset Code** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Switch On/Off** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press

Answer Time

Adjust ring time between 1 and 30 seconds
(Auto Answer waits to answer calls)

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Auto Answer

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press **■** ▶ **Select Answer Time** ▶ Press **■** ▶ **Enter time** ▶ Press **■**

Additional Settings

Minute Minder

Handset beeps once each minute during calls

Default: Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Minute Minder

Choose On (handset beeps) or Off ▶ Press **■**

- Handset beeps every minute.

Display

Call Cost

Show or hide Call Cost after each call

Default: Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Disp. Time/Call
▶ Display Call Cost

Choose On (Call Cost appears) or Off ▶ Press **■**

Call Time

Counter

Show or hide elapsed Call Time during a call

Default: On

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Disp. Time/Call
▶ Call Time Counter

Choose On (Call Time appears) or Off ▶ Press **■**

Connectivity

Bluetooth®

Getting Started

Bluetooth® is a wireless technology that allows 810SH and 811SH to communicate with other 810SH and 811SH within ten metres or with other compatible devices (PCs, mobile phones, handsfree devices, etc.). In this chapter, "files" refers collectively to the following: Bookmarks, Tasks, Text Templates, Phone Book and Calendar entries; Messaging and Data Folder files.

Handset Bluetooth® Specifications:

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver 2.0
Bluetooth® Profiles Supported	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-up Networking Profile ObjectPush Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2

Note ► **Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.**

- Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices, connection or data transfers may fail, or operational procedures, display content and actual operations may differ from those described in this manual.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations depending on the status of connected devices or signal conditions.
- For details about headset/handsfree devices, see the device manuals.

Precautions

- Bluetooth® connections are available with compatible devices supporting the same profile.
- Bring handsets to within ten metres. Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate is affected by distance between handsets, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.
- Bluetooth® operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on the status of other devices used in the spectrum, Bluetooth® connection may slow down/terminate, or the range may decrease.

Activating Bluetooth®

Activate Bluetooth® before receiving files or connecting handset to handsfree devices.

Bluetooth® is **Off** by default.

Main Menu

► Settings ► Connectivity () ► Bluetooth ► Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** and press

 appears.

To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press

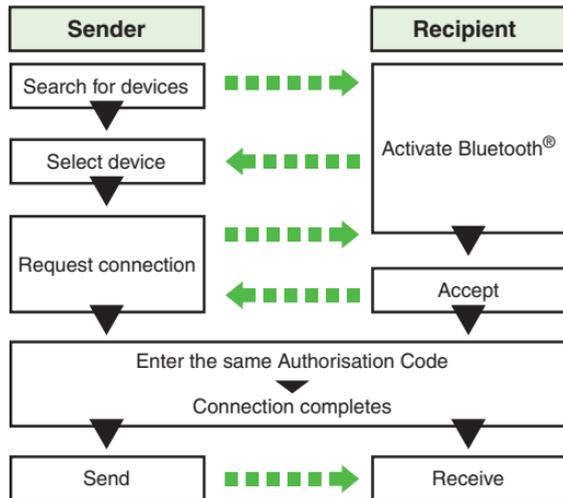
- When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ► Press

Note ► Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from other devices or to receive files; these functions are disabled even in Standby if Function Lock/Keypad Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.

Bluetooth® Connection

Activate Bluetooth® (see P.10-2) on recipient device.
Connection starts when a request is received from the other device. (Authorisation Code may be required.)

Example



Authorisation Code

- Authorisation Codes (4 to 16 digits) are specific for Bluetooth® connection. Pairing is possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.
 - Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

Device Search & Pairing

Search for Bluetooth® devices for pairing.

- Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.
- Search for up to 16 devices at a time.
- Device search is disabled if 32 devices are already registered.
- Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity () ▶ Bluetooth

1 Select Search for Devices and press

Found devices are listed after search. (The previous search result appears, if any.)

- Device Indicators:

: PC : Wireless headset : PDA
: Handsfree device : Mobile phone : Printer
: Others

■ Press **Cancel** to cancel.

2 Select a device and press **Pairing**

■ When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

3 Enter the same Authorisation Code (4 to 16 digits) for handset and the other device and press

When pairing is complete, **Pairing is successful.** appears.

- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorisation Code.
- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

4 Press

Pairing with Handsfree Devices

- Start device search with handsfree devices for pairing.
Handset receives a connection request ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press** ➔ **Enter Authorisation Code** ➔ **Press**
 - Activate Bluetooth® (see P.10-2) on handset and set Visibility (see below) to **Show My Phone**.

Opening Paired Device List

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➔ *Connectivity* (☰) ➔ *Bluetooth*

1 Select Paired Devices and press

List of all paired devices appears.

- To open list of handsfree devices only, press .
- To rename paired devices, select one ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Change Name** ➔ Press ➔ Enter name (up to 16 characters) ➔ Press
- To delete paired devices, select one ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

Visibility

Make handset visible to other Bluetooth® devices.

- Set Visibility to **Hide My Phone** to cloak handset.
- Visibility is set to **Show My Phone** by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ➔ *Connectivity* (☰) ➔ *Bluetooth* ➔ *My Device Settings* ➔ *Visibility*

1 Choose **Show My Phone** or **Hide My Phone** and press

Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer files one at a time. Received files are saved to corresponding functions.
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. Folders are saved to Data Folder. (Handset does not support sending folders.)

- Note** ▶
- Infrared and Bluetooth® transfers activate Offline Mode. Thus, transfers are disabled during calls, while receiving calls/messages, using the Internet or Media Player, or editing mail, etc. Offline Mode is cancelled after transfers.
 - Some files may not be saved correctly.

Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	One File Transfer omits Category, Tone/Video, Vibration and Secret. Picture may be omitted; transfer image alone then reset as Picture.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Calendar	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable start date/time cannot be saved.
Tasks	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1; omits Secret and (if unsettable on the target device) Due Date & Time.
Text Templates	Available ²	Available	
Bookmarks	Available	Available ³	
Received Msg.	N/A ⁴	Available ⁵	
Sent Messages	N/A ⁴	Available	
Drafts	N/A ⁴	Available ⁶	
Templates	Available	Available ⁷	Copy protected files are not transferable.
Data Folder	Available	Available ⁷	Copy protected files are not transferable. Send files from DCIM folder one at a time; received DCIM folder files are saved to Pictures folder.

¹In All File transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from **Appointments/Tasks**.

²Only receiving files is supported.

³Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are backed up. When restored, Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

⁴Received files are saved to Other Documents folder as unknown files and cannot be used as messages.

⁵All File transfers save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 810SH and 811SH) and S! Mail Notices as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

⁶In All File transfers, SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 810SH and 811SH), or only the first entered recipient remains.

⁷Receive folders one at a time into handset Data Folder.

Note ▶

- Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
- Transfer most Memory Card Data Folder files one at a time. Send DCIM folder files one by one; received DCIM files are automatically saved in Pictures folder.
- Templates and Unsent Messages are not transferable.
- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Large Bookmarks may not restore correctly.
- Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail on handset depending on the sender SoftBank handset.
- Receiving Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.

One File Transfer

Sending

Send one file from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Bookmarks, Templates or Data Folder (see P.10-4 "Transferable Files").

- 1 Select a file and press**  **Options**
- 2 Select *Send*, *Send Entry* or *Send My Card* and press** 
- 3 Select *Bluetooth* or *Via Bluetooth* and press** 
 - When there is no entry in Paired Devices, device search starts.
 -  To send files to unpaired devices, select **More Devices**  Press   Press  **Refresh**  Device search starts
- 4 Select a device and press** 
 -  When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes**  Press 
- 5 Prepare recipient device**
- 6 Choose **Yes** and press** 

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts.

 -  When requested, enter Authorisation Code  Press 

Receiving

Main Menu  Settings  Connectivity   Bluetooth  Switch On/Off

- 1 Choose **On** and press** 

Bluetooth® is activated.
- 2 When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears**
 -  To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose **Yes**  Press   Enter Authorisation Code  Press 
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press** 

Offline Mode is set.
- 4 Transfer starts and confirmation appears**
 -  Press  **Cancel** to cancel.
 -  Press  to end.
- 5 Choose **Yes** and press**  **to save**
 -  To cancel transfer, choose **No**  Press   Choose **Yes**  Press 
 -  For Data Folder files, select **Phone** or **Memory Card**  Press 

All File Transfer

Sending

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (☰) ► Bluetooth

1 Select *Send All* and press

- When there is no entry in Paired Devices, device search starts.

■ To send files to unpaired devices, select **More Devices** ► Press ► Press Refresh ► Device search starts

2 Select a device and press

■ When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ► Press

3 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set.

4 Enter Handset Code and press

5 Prepare recipient device

6 Select an item and press

Transfer starts.

■ When requested, enter Authorisation Code ► Press

■ For Phone Book, choose **Yes** or **No** ► Press

Receiving

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (☰) ► Bluetooth ► Switch On/Off

1 Choose *On* and press

Bluetooth® is activated.

2 When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears

■ To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose **Yes** ► Press ► Enter Authorisation Code ► Press

3 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set.

4 Transfer starts and confirmation appears

■ Press Cancel to cancel.

■ Press to end.

5 *Adding Files*

1 Select *As New Items* and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

■ Press Cancel to cancel.

■ Press to end.

Overwriting Existing Files

1 Select *Delete All & Save* and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

3 Enter Handset Code and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

■ Press Cancel to cancel.

■ Press to end.

Receiving Folders

Receive folders from compatible devices and save to handset Data Folder.

- Handset does not support sending folders.
- Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- For sender's procedures, see the device manual.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity (☰) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Switch On/Off

1 Choose *On* and press

Bluetooth® is activated.

2 When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears

To accept connection request from unpaired devices, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Authorisation Code ▶ Press

3 Choose *Yes* and press

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, handset returns to Standby.

- ▶ Press **Cancel** to cancel.
- ▶ Press to end.

Connecting Handsfree Devices

Pair with handsfree devices beforehand (see P.10-3).

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity (☰) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Paired Devices

1 Press

List of paired handsfree devices appears.

2 Select a device and press

The device is connected and (checked) appears.

- ▶ When transmission is in progress, choose **Yes** ▶ Press
- ▶ To disconnect, select a device ▶ Press
- ▶ To rename paired devices, select one ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Change Name** ▶ Press ▶ Enter name ▶ Press

Sound Output

- ▶ Switch sound output between handset and handsfree devices.

While talking on the phone, press **Options** ▶

Select **Transfer Audio** ▶ Press ▶ Select **To Phone or To Bluetooth** ▶ Press

- Select **To Phone** to talk on handset.
- If **To Bluetooth** is selected while a handsfree device is not connected, list of paired handsfree devices appears.

- Note** ▶
- While talking on handsfree devices, adjust volume on the device.
 - Place calls from handsfree devices while handset is in Standby.

- Tip** ▶
- Devices marked with reconnect to handset when placing or receiving calls.
 - indicates that the device is not selected. When is set to the connected device, a confirmation appears.

Bluetooth® Settings

Device Name Specify a Bluetooth® name for handset

Default 810SH or 811SH

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶
My Device Settings ▶ Device Name

Enter name ▶ **Press** ■

- Enter up to 16 characters. (Pictograms are not available.)

Bluetooth Timeout Set idle time after which Bluetooth® is cancelled

Default No Timeout

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶
My Device Settings ▶ Bluetooth Timeout

Select time ▶ **Press** ■

- To cancel, select **No Timeout** ▶ **Press** ■

Handsfree Setting Select whether to talk handsfree when placing calls from handset

Default Handsfree Mode

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ My
Device Settings ▶ Handsfree Setting

Select Handsfree Mode or Private Mode ▶ **Press** ■

- When placing calls from handsfree devices, only handsfree conversation is available regardless of setting.

My Device Details Open Bluetooth®-related handset properties

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ **Bluetooth**

Select My Device Details ▶ **Press** ■

Infrared

Getting Started

Infrared is a wireless technology that allows 810SH and 811SH to communicate with other 810SH and 811SH or with other compatible devices (PCs, mobile phones, etc.).

In this chapter, "files" refers collectively to the following:

Bookmarks, Tasks, Text Templates, Phone Book and Calendar entries; Messaging and Data Folder files.

- 810SH and 811SH comply with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.
- Infrared transfers are disabled while sending/receiving mail or using the Internet.
- Transfers in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment may fail.

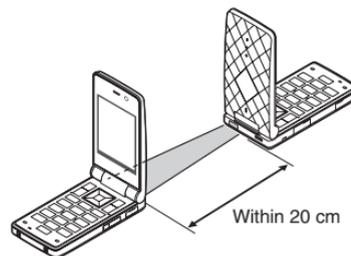
Tip ▶ When transfer fails, ***Device not found. Reconnect?*** appears. Take the precautions below then choose **Yes** and press **■** to try again.

Authorisation Code

- Authorisation Codes (four digits) are specific for infrared transfers. All File transfers are possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.

Precautions

- Align Infrared Ports within 20 centimetres with no obstructions between handsets.



- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Dust/oil may impair file transfers; clean Infrared Ports with a soft cloth beforehand.

Transferring Files via Infrared

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer files one at a time. Received files are saved to corresponding functions.
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. Folders are saved to Data Folder. (Handset does not support sending folders.)
High-Speed Infrared (see P.10-12)	Transfer JPEG files one at a time from Data Folder (Pictures or DCIM). Received files are saved to Pictures folder.

- Note** ►
- Transfers are disabled while using the Internet or Media Player, while editing mail or files, etc.
 - Some files may not be saved in whole or part.
 - Only compatible devices receive files transferred via high-speed infrared.

Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	One File Transfer omits Category, Tone/Video, Vibration and Secret. Picture may be omitted; transfer image alone then reset as Picture.
Calendar	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable start date/time cannot be saved.
Tasks	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Reminder Tone/Video to Alert 1; omits Secret and (if unsettable on the target device) Due Date & Time.

¹In All File transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from **Appointments/Tasks**.

²Only receiving files is supported.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Text Templates	Available ²	Available	
Bookmarks	Available	Available ³	
Received Msg.	N/A ⁴	Available ⁵	
Sent Messages	N/A ⁴	Available	
Drafts	N/A ⁴	Available ⁶	
Templates	Available	Available ⁷	Copy protected files are not transferable.
Data Folder	Available	Available ⁷	Copy protected files are not transferable. Send files from DCIM folder one at a time; received DCIM folder files are saved to Pictures folder.

³Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are backed up. When restored, Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

⁴Received files are saved to Other Documents folder as unknown files and cannot be used as messages.

⁵All File transfers save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 810SH and 811SH) and S! Mail Notices as standard messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

⁶In All File transfers, SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 810SH and 811SH), or only the first entered recipient remains.

⁷Receive folders one at a time into handset Data Folder.

Note ► Receiving Messaging folders cancels Secret folder settings and deletes auto sort keys.

- Note** ►
- Handset stores up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
 - Transfer most Memory Card Data Folder files one at a time. Send DCIM folder files one by one; received DCIM files are automatically saved in Pictures folder.
 - Unsent Messages are not transferable.
 - Messages may not be received depending on the size.
 - Large Bookmarks may not restore correctly.
 - Handset stores up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
 - Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail on handset depending on the sender SoftBank handset.

One File Transfer

Sending

Send one file from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Bookmarks, Templates or Data Folder (see P.10-11 "Transferable Files").

- 1 Select a file and press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Send, Send Entry or Send My Card** and press 
- 3 Select **Via Infrared** and press 
- 4 Prepare recipient device

5 Choose Yes and press

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, file list returns.

Transferring Images via High-Speed Infrared

- Follow these steps to send images to compatible devices.
 - Press  ► **Select Data Folder** ► Press  ► **Select Pictures or DCIM** ► Press  ► **Select a file** ► Press  (**Long Press**)
 - Only JPEG images are supported.
 - Transfers are one-way; start regardless of recipient device status and end even if files are not received.
 - For recipient's procedures, see "Receiving" below.

Receiving

Main Menu ► Settings ► **Connectivity** () ► **Infrared** ► **Switch On/Off**

- 1 Choose **On (3 min.)** and press 

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

 - Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.
- 2 When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears
 - High-speed infrared transfers activate Offline Mode.
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press 

Offline Mode is set.

4 Transfer starts and confirmation appears

- Press **Cancel** to cancel.
- Press to end.

5 Choose **Yes** and press to save

- To cancel transfer, choose **No** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
- For Data Folder files, select **Phone** or **Memory Card** → Press
 - Files are automatically saved to handset or Memory Card depending on available memory.

- Note** ▶
- Handset must be in Standby to receive files; this function is disabled even in Standby if Function Lock/ Keypad Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.
 - High-speed infrared transfer supports JPEG files only. Send up to 1.8 MB per transfer to 810SH or 811SH.

All File Transfer

Sending

Main Menu ▶ Settings → **Connectivity** (☰) → **Infrared**

- Select **Send All** and press
- Choose **Yes** and press
Offline Mode is set.
- Enter Handset Code and press
- Select an item and press
- Prepare recipient device

6 Enter Authorisation Code and press

- Transfer starts. When finished, Send All menu returns.
- For Phone Book, choose **Yes** or **No** → Press

Receiving

Main Menu ▶ Settings → **Connectivity** (☰) → **Infrared** → **Switch On/Off**

- Choose **On (3 min.)** and press
Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.
 - Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.
- When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears
- Choose **Yes** and press
Offline Mode is set.
- Enter Authorisation Code and press
 - Enter the same Authorisation Code as sender's.
- Transfer starts and confirmation appears
 - Press **Cancel** to cancel.
 - Press to end.
- Adding Files**
 - Select **As New Items** and press
When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.
 - Press **Cancel** to cancel.
 - Press to end.

Overwriting Existing Files

1 Select *Delete All & Save* and press 

2 Choose *Yes* and press 

3 Enter Handset Code and press 

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

 Press  **Cancel** to cancel.

 Press  to end.

Receiving Folders

Receive folders from compatible devices and save to handset Data Folder.

- Handset does not support sending folders.
- Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- For sender's procedures, see the device manual.

Main Menu  Settings  **Connectivity**  Infrared  Switch On/Off

1 Choose *On (3 min.)* and press 

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

- Acquire infrared transmission within three minutes.

2 When connection is requested, *Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears

3 Choose *Yes* and press 

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, handset returns to Standby.

- If the same folder name exists, received files are saved there.

 Press  **Cancel** to cancel.

 Press  to end.

Mass Storage

Activate Mass Storage and connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

- Activating Mass Storage activates Offline Mode.
- Mass Storage is not available when battery is low, when an S! Application is paused or while Music Player is active.

Main Menu  Settings  **Connectivity** 

1 Select *Mass Storage* and press 

Calling not available during operation, OK? appears.

2 Choose *Yes* and press 

3 Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable

- If it is already connected, remove it then reconnect it.

4 To exit, press **[Cancel]**

5 Choose **Yes** and press **[OK]**

- Safely remove handset (recognised as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

Network Settings

See **P.2-16** for information on Select Service.

Select Network	Select a Network to connect
	Default Automatic

Main Menu	▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (F4) ▶ Select Network
-----------	---

Select **Manual** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press **[OK]**

- To change Network automatically, select **Automatic** ▶ Press **[OK]**
- Use default setting unless connecting to a specific Network.

Set Preferred	Set priority of Networks to be selected when Automatic for set for Select Network
---------------	--

Main Menu	▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (F4) ▶ Select Network ▶ Set Preferred
-----------	---

Inserting Network

Select a place to insert ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Insert** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press **[OK]**

- Network is inserted above the selected entry.

Adding Network to the End

Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Add to end** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press **[OK]**

Deleting Network

Select a Network ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **[OK]**

Add, Edit & Delete	Add, edit or delete Networks
Main Menu	▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (F4) ▶ Select Network ▶ Add New Network

Adding Network

Select **Add** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Enter a country code ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Enter a Network code ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Enter name ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Select NW Type** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select a Network type ▶ Press **[OK]**

- Add up to 5 Networks.
- After selecting **Add New Network** and pressing **[OK]**, Network list appears if Network has already been added. In this case, press **[OK]** again and perform above operations.
- Use up to 3 digits for country code and Network code, and up to 25 single-byte alphanumeric characters for name.

Editing Network

Select a Network ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Change** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Edit settings

- Edit in the same manner as in "Adding Network" above.

Deleting Network

Select a Network ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **[OK]**

Network Info	Check Network Information
Main Menu	▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (F4)

Select **Network Info** ▶ Press **[OK]**

Retrieve
NW Info

Retrieve Network Information manually

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (↵)

Select **Retrieve NW Info** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes**
 ▶ Press

Location Info

URL Setting

Set URL of map information provider

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (↵) ▶ Location Info
 ▶ URL SettingSelect **URL** ▶ Press

- To view complete URLs, select one ▶ Press **Options** ▶
 Select **Display** ▶ Press
- To edit URLs, select one ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Edit**
 ▶ Press ▶ Edit URL ▶ Press
 ■ Default URL cannot be edited.
- To delete URLs, select one ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select
Delete ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press
 ■ Default URL cannot be deleted.
- To add URLs, select **<empty>** ▶ Press ▶ Enter URL ▶
 Press

Datum On/Off

Select whether to send Location Information
 automatically upon request

Default: On

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (↵) ▶ Location Info
 ▶ Datum On/Off

Choose **On (send)** or **Off** ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶
 Press

Location
PropertySet Location Information confirmation
 parameters

Default: Always Confirm

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (↵) ▶ Location Info
 ▶ Location Property

Select **Always Confirm, Send or Do Not Send** ▶
 Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

Tools

Calendar

Opening Calendar

- Open Calendar in Month View, 2Month View, 6Month View or Week View.
- Calendar appears in Month View by default.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰)

1 Select Calendar and press

Calendar of the current month opens.

- If Clock is unset, use  to select a Time Zone ▶ Press  ▶ Enter date/time ▶ Press 
- To open Help (Key Assignments), press  **Options** ▶ Select **Help** ▶ Press 
- Press  to return.



Calendar Window
(Month View)

■ Key Assignments

Key	Month/2Month/6Month View	Week View
	Open the previous month ¹	Open the previous week
	Open the next month ¹	Open the next week
	Toggle view (Month → 2Month → 6Month → Week)	
	Select the current date	
	Quick Entry (Icons) ²	—
	Select the previous/next week ¹	Select the previous/next time block
	Select date	

¹In 2Month View or 6Month View, view changes by two or six months, respectively.

²Available in Month View.

Default View

Set to open Calendar in Month View, 2Month View, 6Month View or Week View

 Default Month View

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Calendar

Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Default View** ▶ Press  ▶ Select a type ▶ Press 

Set Colour

Set Calendar date colour

 Default Sunday (and holiday): Red, Saturday: Blue, Others: Black

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Calendar

By Days of the Week

Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Set Colour** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **By Week** ▶ Press  ▶ Select a day ▶ Press  ▶ Select a colour ▶ Press 

By Date

Select a day ▶ Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Set Colour** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **By Date** ▶ Press  ▶ Select a colour ▶ Press 

■ To use the colour set for the day of the week, select **No Setting** ▶ Press 

Set Holiday

Remove/restore preset holidays or save additional holidays

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Calendar

Removing/Restoring Holidays

Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Set Holiday** ▶ Press  ▶ Select a holiday ▶ Press  to check or uncheck

Saving/Editing Additional Holidays

Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Set Holiday** ▶ Press  ▶ Select <empty> or a newly added holiday ▶ Press  ▶ Enter name ▶ Press  ▶ Enter date ▶ Press  ▶ Select frequency ▶ Press  ▶ Press  **Save**

- Tip** ▶
- Preset holidays cannot be deleted or edited.
 - Save up to ten additional holidays.

Quick Entry Create new entry quickly by entering an icon

■ Available in Month View.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Calendar

Select a date ▶ Press [8:30] ▶ Select a category ▶ Press [■]

Tip ▶ To edit the entry, see P.11-6.

Set Cal. Alarm Set schedule Reminder volume/vibration for Normal and Manner modes separately

Default Normal mode: Level 3/Vibration Off, Manner mode: Silent/Vibration On

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Calendar

Alarm Volume

Press [☰] **Options** ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Select **Set Cal. Alarm** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Select **Normal mode** or **Manner mode** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Select **Alarm Volume:** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Use [▲/▼] to adjust level ▶ Press [■]

Vibration

Press [☰] **Options** ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Select **Set Cal. Alarm** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Select **Normal mode** or **Manner mode** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Select **Vibration:** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Select **On, Link to Sound** or **Off** ▶ Press [■]

Saving Entries

Organise daily, weekly, monthly and yearly schedule. Save up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks (see P.11-7).

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Calendar

1 Select a day and press [■]

2 Select **<Add New Entry>** and press [■]

3 Enter subject and press [■]

- Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

4 Enter start date/time and press [■]

- For all-day entries, enter date and press [☰] (press again to cancel), then press [■] and skip ahead to Step 7.

5 Select **End:** and press [■]

6 Enter end date/time and press [■]

7 Select **Category:** and press [■]

8 Select a category and press [■]

- To proceed without setting Reminder, skip ahead to Step 13. For all-day entries, set Repeat (see P.11-5) and skip ahead to Step 13.

9 Select **Reminder:** and press [■]

10 Select **Reminder Time:** and press [■]

11 Select from **At Start Time to 1 hour before** and press [■]

- For custom Reminder Time, select **Other** ▶ Press [■] ▶ Enter date/time ▶ Press [■]

- To set tone/video and duration, see P.11-4 - 11-5.

12 Press [X7] **OK**

- If **OK** does not appear, press [BACK].
- Repeat: see P.11-5

13 Select **Location:** and press [■]

14 Enter location and press [■]

- Enter up to 16 characters.



New Entry Window

15 Select *Description:* and press 

16 Enter schedule details and press 

- Enter up to 128 characters.

 Secret: see P.11-5

17 Press  

The entry is saved.

Note ▶ When entries are transferred to other devices, date/time or other information may appear different depending on the recipient device.

Tip ▶  (Reminder set) or  (Reminder unset) appears on scheduled day. (Indicator disappears after scheduled time.)

At Reminder Time

Reminder is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see P.9-3).

However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Reminder

■ Press  ,  or .

Opening Entries

■ While Reminder is activated, press .

Tip ▶

- If Reminder Time arrives during a call or while recording video, Reminder will not be announced. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Reminder.
- Active Reminder stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

Calendar Options

Follow these steps after Step 12 on P.11-3. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone Set a tone to sound at Reminder Time

 Alert 1

Preset Sounds

Select Reminder: ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Assign Tone/Video:** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Preset Sounds** ▶ Press 
 ▶ **Select a tone** ▶ Press  ▶ Press  

 To play tones, select one and press .

■ Press  to stop.

Sounds in Data Folder

Select Reminder: ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Assign Tone/Video:** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Ring Songs·Tunes, Music, Video or Flash® Ringtone** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select a file** ▶ Press  ▶ Press  

 To play video files, select one and press .

■ Press  to stop.

Duration

Set how long Alarm operates

Default: 10 seconds

Select **Reminder**: ➔ Press ➔ Select **Duration**: ➔ Press ➔ Select time ➔ Press ➔

Press **OK**

For custom Duration, select **Other** ➔ Press ➔ Enter time ➔ Press ➔ Press **OK**

Repeat

Assign schedule type (once only, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly) for each event

Default: Once Only

Once Only Schedule

Select **Repeat**: ➔ Press ➔ Select **Once Only** ➔ Press

Repetitive Schedule

Select **Repeat**: ➔ Press ➔ Select from **Day to Every Year** ➔ Press ➔ Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) ➔ Press

- Start date and time are reflected in the items. For **Month**, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.
- Repeat time is not available for **Every Year**; the schedule is repeated until deleted.
- Set Repeat time to **00** to repeat until deleted.

Secret

Restrict access to entries

Default: Off

Select **Secret**: ➔ Press ➔ Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press

- Activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-24) to open/edit Secret entries.

Opening Entries

Main Menu ➔ Tools ➔ Tools 1 (📅) ➔ Calendar

1 Select a date and press

Alternatively, to specify date, press **Options** ➔ Select **Go to** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Enter Date** ➔ Press ➔ Enter date ➔ Press

Alternatively, to open current date, press **Options** ➔ Select **Go to** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Today** ➔ Press

2 Select an entry and press

To send the entry via S! Mail, press **Options** ➔ Select **Send** ➔ Press ➔ Select **As Message** ➔ Press ➔ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.13-8.)

3 Press to exit

Memory Status

After Step 1, press **Options** ➔ Select **Memory Status** ➔ Press

Unlock Temporarily

■ For temporary access to Secret entries, open Calendar and follow these steps.

Press **Options** → Select **Unlock Temporarily** →

Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

- Secret entries are hidden next time Calendar is opened.

Searching Entries by Subject

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 () ▶ Calendar

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Find** and press

3 Enter search text and press

- Enter up to 32 characters.

4 Select an entry and press

Editing Entries

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 () ▶ Calendar

1 Select a date and press

2 Select an entry and press **Options**

3 Select **Edit** and press

4 Select an item and press

- For details, see procedure for saving entries.

5 When finished editing, press **Save**

Deleting Entries

**This Appointment/
All This Day** Delete one entry or all entries of the day

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 () ▶ Calendar

One Entry

Select a date → Press → Select an entry →

Press **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press →

Select **This Appointment** → Press → Choose Yes

→ Press

All Entries of the Day

Select a date → Press **Options** → Select **Delete** →

Press → Select **All This Day** → Press →

Choose Yes → Press

**All This Week/
Up to Last Week** In Week View, delete all entries in the week or up to the end of the previous week

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 () ▶ Calendar

Week

Select a week → Press **Options** → Select **Delete** →

Press → Select **All This Week** → Press →

Choose Yes → Press

Up to the End of Previous Week

Select a week → Press **Options** → Select **Delete** →

Press → Select **Up to Last Week** → Press →

Choose Yes → Press

**All This Month/
Up to Last Month** In Month View, delete all entries in the month
or up to the end of the previous month

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (F1) ▶ *Calendar*

Month

Select a month ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select *Delete*
▶ Press ▶ Select *All This Month* ▶ Press ▶
Choose Yes ▶ Press

Up to the End of Previous Month

Select a month ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select *Delete*
▶ Press ▶ Select *Up to Last Month* ▶ Press ▶
Choose Yes ▶ Press

**All This
2Months** Delete all entries in two months on Display

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (F1) ▶ *Calendar*

Select two months ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select
Delete ▶ Press ▶ Select *All This 2Months* ▶
Press ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press

**All This
6Months** Delete all entries in six months on Display

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (F1) ▶ *Calendar*

Select six months ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select
Delete ▶ Press ▶ Select *All This 6Months* ▶
Press ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press

**All
Appointments** Delete all entries

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (F1) ▶ *Calendar*

Press **Options** ▶ Select *Delete* ▶ Press ▶ Select
All Appointments ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code
▶ Press ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press

Deleting Repetitive Entries

■ A confirmation appears except for **All Appointments**. To
delete, follow these steps.

Choose Yes ▶ Press

■ To retain repetitive entries, choose **No** ▶ Press

Tasks

Save event with deadlines.

- Check completed tasks (see P.11-10).
- Save up to 300 entries between Tasks and Calendar (see P.11-3).

Saving Entries

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (F1) ▶ *Tasks*

1 Select <Add New Entry> and press

2 Enter subject and press

- Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

3 Enter due date/time and press

- To set no limit, press (press again to cancel), then press and skip ahead to Step 8.
- To proceed without setting Reminder, skip ahead to Step 8.

4 Select *Reminder:* and press

5 Select *Reminder Time:* and press

6 Select from *At Due Time to 1 hour before* and press

For custom Reminder Time, select **Other** → Press → Enter date/time → Press

To set tone/video and duration, see P.11-8 "Assign Tone" and P.11-9 "Duration."

7 Press

8 Select *Description:* and press

9 Enter task details and press

• Enter up to 128 characters.

Secret: see P.11-9

10 Press

The entry is saved.



New Entry Window

At Reminder Time

Reminder is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see P.9-3).

However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Reminder

Press , or .

Opening Entries

While Reminder is activated, press .

- Tip** ▶
- If Reminder Time arrives during a call or while recording video, Reminder will not be announced. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Reminder.
 - Active Reminder stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

Task Options

Follow these steps after Step 7 on the left. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone

Set a tone to sound at Reminder Time

Default Alert 1

Preset Sounds

Select *Reminder:* → Press → Select *Assign Tone/*

Video: → Press → Select *Preset Sounds* →

Press → Select a tone → Press →

Press

To play tones, select one and press .

Press to stop.

Sounds in Data Folder

Select *Reminder:* → Press → Select *Assign Tone/*

Video → Press → Select *Ring Songs-Tones,*

Music, Video or Flash® Ringtone → Press →

Select a file → Press → Press

To play files, select one and press .

Press to stop.

Duration

Set how long Reminder operates

Default: 10 seconds

Select **Reminder**: → Press → Select **Duration**: → Press → Select time → Press →

Press **OK**

For custom Duration, select **Other** → Press → Enter time → Press → Press **OK**

Secret

Restrict access to entries

Default: Off

Select **Secret**: → Press → Choose **On** or **Off** → Press

- Activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-24) to open/edit Secret entries.

Set Task Alarm

- Select Alarm Volume settings for Normal and Manner modes. In Task list, select an entry → Press **Options** → Select **Set Task Alarm** → Press → Select **Normal Mode** or **Manner Mode** → Press → Select **Alarm Volume**: → Press → Use to adjust volume → Press
- Select Vibration settings for Normal and Manner modes. In Task list, select an entry → Press **Options** → Select **Set Task Alarm** → Press → Select **Normal Mode** or **Manner Mode** → Press → Select **Vibration**: → Press → Select **On**, **Link to Sound** or **Off** → Press

Opening Entries

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (←)

1 Select **Tasks** and press

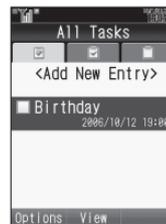
To open completed (checked) entries, use to select (Completed Tasks).

To open uncompleted (unchecked) entries, use to select (Incomplete Tasks).

2 Select an entry and press

To send the entry via S! Mail, press **Options** → Select **Send** → Press → Select **As Message** → Press → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.13-8.)

3 Press **CLEAR** **BACK** to exit



Completed Tasks

- To mark completed, follow these steps after Step 1 on P.11-9.
Select an unchecked entry (☐) → **Press** (■) → **Press** (■)
- To cancel checks, select a checked entry (☑) → **Press** (■) → **Press** (■)

Unlock Temporarily

- For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.
After Step 1 on P.11-9, press (☑) **Options** → **Select Unlock Temporarily** → **Press** (■) → **Enter Handset Code** → **Press** (■)
- Secret entries are hidden next time Task list is opened.

Memory Status

- **After Step 1 on P.11-9, press** (☑) **Options** → **Select Memory Status** → **Press** (■)

Searching Entries by Subject

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☰) ▶ *Tasks*

- 1** **Press** (☑) **Options**
- 2** **Select *Find*** and **press** (■)
- 3** **Enter search text and press** (■)
 - Enter up to 32 characters.
- 4** **Select an entry and press** (■)

Editing Entries

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☰) ▶ *Tasks*

- 1** **Select an entry and press** (☑) **Options**
- 2** **Select *Edit*** and **press** (■)
- 3** **Select an item and press** (■)
 - For details, see procedure for saving entries.
- 4** **When finished editing, press** (☑) **Save**

Deleting Entries

This Task Delete one entry

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☰) ▶ *Tasks*

- Select an entry** → **Press** (☑) **Options** → **Select *Delete*** → **Press** (■) → **Select *This Task*** → **Press** (■) → **Choose Yes** → **Press** (■)

**All Tasks/
All Comp. Tasks** Delete all tasks or all completed tasks

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (☰) ▶ *Tasks*

All Tasks

- Press** (☑) **Options** → **Select *Delete*** → **Press** (■) → **Select *All Tasks*** → **Press** (■) → **Enter Handset Code** → **Press** (■) → **Choose Yes** → **Press** (■)

All Completed Tasks

- Press** (☑) **Options** → **Select *Delete*** → **Press** (■) → **Select *All Comp. Tasks*** → **Press** (■) → **Choose Yes** → **Press** (■)

Alarm

Setting Alarm

Set Alarm to sound at a specific time each day or on specific days of the week. Save up to 5 Alarm settings.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (T-1) ▶ Alarms

1 Select -- : -- and press

2 Enter time and press

Alarm Options: see P.11-12

3 Select *Repeat:* and press

4 *Daily*

1 Select *Every Day* and press

Specified Day of the Week

1 Select *Selected Days* and press

To select all, press **Options** ▶ Select *Check All* ▶ Press ▶ Skip ahead to Step **4**

2 Select a day of the week and press

The day is set and appears.

To cancel, highlight the selected day and press .

3 Repeat Step **2** to select more

4 Press **OK** when finished

One Time Alarm

1 Select *Once Only* and press



Alarm Settings

5 Press **Save**

Alarm is set.

For more settings, start over from Step 1.

6 Press to exit

Handset returns to Standby and appears.

For Manner Mode

1 Set Alarm volume for Manner mode.

After Step 1, select for Manner Mode ▶ Press ▶
Select Alarm Volume: ▶ Press ▶ Use to
adjust level ▶ Press

2 Set Alarm vibration for Manner mode.

After Step 1, select for Manner Mode ▶ Press ▶
Select Vibration: ▶ Press ▶ **Select On, Link to
Sound or Off** ▶ Press

At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics is set (see P.9-3).

However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

Stopping Alarm

■ Press **Stop**, or .

- Alarm activates only when handset is on at Alarm Time.

Snooze

■ When Snooze (see **P.11-13**) is set, Alarm repeats at the set interval.

- Accept incoming calls. End the call to reactivate Snooze.
- If other Alarm Time arrives while Snoozing, the other Alarm is activated only after Snooze is cancelled.

■ To cancel Snooze, follow these steps while Alarm is activated or Snoozing.

Press **Stop**, or ⇒ **Choose Yes** ⇒

Press .

- Snooze is cancelled automatically 60 minutes after initial Alarm Time.

- Tip** ▶
- If Alarm Time arrives during a call or while recording video, no tone will sound. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Alarm.
 - In Manner mode, volume depends on **for Manner Mode** setting (**Silent** by default).
 - Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

Alarm Options

Follow these steps after Step 2 on **P.11-11**. After each setting, Alarm settings window returns. Complete other settings.

Assign Tone

Set a tone to sound at Alarm Time

Default Alert 1

Preset Sounds

Select **Assign Tone/Video** ⇒ Press ⇒ Select **Preset Sounds** ⇒ Press ⇒ Select a tone ⇒ Press .

■ To play tones, select one and press **Play**.

- Press **Stop** to stop.

Sounds in Data Folder

Select **Assign Tone/Video** ⇒ Press ⇒ Select **Ring Songs/Tones, Music, Video or Flash® Ringtone** ⇒ Press ⇒ Select a file ⇒ Press .

■ To play files, select one and press **Play**.

- Press to stop.

Custom Screen

Set Custom Screen tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time

Select **Assign Tone/Video** ⇒ Press ⇒ Select **Custom Screen** ⇒ Press .

■ To play files, select Custom Screen and press **Play**.

- Press **Stop** to stop.

- **Custom Screen** is selectable when compatible Custom Screen is active.

Snooze

Set Alarm to activate at set intervals after initial Alarm Time

Select Snooze: → Press → **Select an interval** → Press Default Off

For custom intervals, select **Other** → Press → Enter interval → Press

Alarm Volume

Set volume from seven levels

Select Alarm Volume: → Press → Use to adjust level → Press Default Level 5

Vibration

Set handset to vibrate at Alarm Time

Select Vibration: → Press → **Select On, Link to Sound or Off** → Press Default Off

• For details on **Link to Sound**, see P.9-13 "Vibration".

Duration

Set how long Alarm operates

Select Duration: → Press → **Select duration** → Press Default 10 seconds

For custom Duration, select **Other** → Press → Enter time → Press

Cancelling & Reactivating Alarm

Switch Off

Cancel Alarm and retain the settings

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (☰) ▶ **Alarms**

Select an entry → Press **Options** → **Select Switch Off** → Press

-  disappears.
- Reactivate Alarm to use the same settings.

Switch On

Reactivate Alarm with the same settings, or change current settings

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (☰) ▶ **Alarms**

Select an entry → Press **Options** → **Select Switch On** → Press

- To change settings, select an entry → Press → Edit settings
 - For details, see procedure for saving entries.

Deleting Alarm

Reset Alarm

Delete Alarm settings one by one

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (☰) ▶ **Alarms**

Select an entry → Press **Options** → **Select Reset Alarm** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press

Clear All

Delete all Alarm settings

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (☰) ▶ **Alarms**

Select an entry → Press **Options** → **Select Clear All** → Press → **Enter Handset Code** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press

World Clock

Display local date/time (see **P.9-16**) and the date/time of another area in the world.

- Select from preset Time Zones or specify a new one; enter area name and time difference between new and local areas.
- To set World Clock to appear in Standby, see **P.9-4** "Clock/Calendar".
- Time Zone is set to **Tokyo** by default.

Setting Time Zone & Daylight Saving

Activate Daylight Saving to advance the selected area's time by one hour.

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (☰) ▶ **World Clock**

1 Press **■**

2 **Time Zone**

1 Select **Set Time Zone** and press **■**

2 Use **☰** to specify an area and press **■**

- To add Time Zone, press **☑** **Custom** ▶ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ▶ Press **■** ▶ Use **☰** to select + or - ▶ Press **☑** ▶ Enter time difference ▶ Press **■**

Daylight Saving

1 Select **Daylight Saving** and press **■**

2 Choose **On** and press **■**

- To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press **■**

Opening World Clock

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (☰)

1 Select **World Clock** and press **■**



- Tip** ▶
- To change local Time Zone, see **P.9-16**.
 - To set World Clock to appear in Standby, select **World Clock (L)**, **World Clock (S)**, **World Clk+1mo.** or **World Clk+2mos.** for Clock/Calendar (see **P.9-4**).

Calculator

Use Calculator for basic arithmetic (up to 12 digits) and percentage calculation, or currency conversion (Money Converter).

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 1** (☰)

1 Select **Calculator** and press **■**

Calculator opens.

- Alternatively, enter digits in Standby and press **☰** to open Calculator.
- Use Keypad to enter digits, and the keys in the table on **P.11-15** for calculation.



To copy the result, press **Options** ➔ Select **Copy** ➔ Press

+ (Add)		CM (Clear Memory)	
- (Subtract)		RM (Recall Memory)	
x (Multiply)		M+ (Add Memory)	
÷ (Divide)		. (Decimal)	
= (Equal)		+/- (Switch)	
C.CE (Clear)		% (Percent)	

¹While **0** appears, press to return to Tools 1 menu. While **E** appears, press to return to **0**.

²Press **Options** and select %.

2 Press to exit

Money Converter

■ To change exchange rate, open Calculator and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ➔ Select **Money Converter** ➔ Press
 ➔ Select **Exchange Rate** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Domestic or Foreign** ➔ Press ➔ Enter rate ➔ Press

• Exchange rate is **1** for both conversions by default.

■ To convert foreign currencies, follow these steps.

Enter amount of money and press **Options** ➔
 Select **Money Converter** ➔ Press ➔ Select **to Domestic or to Foreign** ➔ Press

• Conversion is based on the preset exchange rate.

- Tip** ▶
- Entered numbers, results and numbers saved in Memory are not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
 - Clear Memory before starting Memory calculations.
 - Numbers saved in Memory remain even if Calculator is closed, but are cleared when handset power is turned off.

Voice Recorder

Use Microphone to record short voice memos and save files on handset or Memory card; record and save longer recordings on Memory Card.

• Modes:

	Recording Time	Storage Media
For Message	Up to three minutes (attachable to S! Mail)	Handset or Memory Card ¹
Extended Voice	Up to 99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds	Memory Card ²

¹Specify storage media before recording, or set handset to ask each time; when set to ask, always record with Memory Card inserted.

²Insert Memory Card to record in Extended Voice mode.

• **For Message** is set by default.

Preparation

- When battery is low, Voice Recorder does not activate. If battery runs low while recording in Extended Voice mode, **Battery low. Please connect to charger!** appears and Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Conversations during calls cannot be recorded.
- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

Recording

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 2 (ⓧ)

1 Select *Voice Recorder* and press

- To switch mode, press **Options** ▶
- Select **Record Time** ▶ Press ▶
- Select **For Message** or **Extended Voice** ▶ Press
- To switch storage media, see P.11-17.



2 Press

Recording starts.

3 *For Message*

1 Press to stop

- Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached.
- To play the recording, select **Playback** ▶ Press
 - Press to pause.
 - Press to return.
- To start over without saving, press ▶ Repeat from Step 2
- To send via S! Mail, select **Save and Send** ▶ Press ▶ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.13-8.)
 - When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press

2 Select **Save** and press

- Recording is saved to handset or Memory Card.
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press

Extended Voice

1 Press to stop

Recording is saved to Memory Card.

- Note** ▶
- Avoid shocks to handset; may cause noise or skipping.
 - Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

- Tip** ▶
- Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Voice Recorder stops/closes.
 - Attach saved Voice file or record voice directly from Mail Composition windows (see P.13-11).

Playback

Play sounds from Speaker, or use Headphones.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 2 (ⓧ) ▶ *Voice Recorder*

1 Press **Options**

2 Select *Ring Songs·Tones* and press

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press **Options** ▶
- Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press

3 Select a file and press

- Playback starts.
- Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume.



Deleting Files

Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.11-16.

Select a file → Press Options → Select **Delete** →

Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Incoming Calls/Mail during Playback

Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.

A notification appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

Recording Setting

Save
Recording To

Select storage media for **For Message**

Default Phone Memory

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 2 (F2) ▶ Voice Recorder

Press Options → Select **Save Recording To** →

Press → Select **Phone Memory, Memory Card or Ask Each Time** → Press

• Set to **Ask Each Time** to select media after every recording.

Document Viewer

Open documents via Data Folder, Internet, S! Mail, Bluetooth® or Infrared.

• Supported File Formats:

	PDF (.pdf)		Microsoft Excel (.xls)
	Microsoft Word (.doc)		Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt)

- Some files may take time to open or may not appear correctly. (Complicated designs, special characters in file names, password-protected, language other than Japanese or English used, etc.)
- On PCs, save documents to this Memory Card directory:
 - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/MY Items/OTHER DOCUMENTS
- Open documents of up to 1 MB each. (Some documents may not open depending on content.)

Data Folder Files

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 2 (F2) ▶ Document Viewer

1 Select a file and press

Internet Files

1 Open a page, select a file and press

Tip ▶ Download files of up to 300 KB via Yahoo! Keitai or up to 500 KB via PC Site Browser.

Attachments

1 In a Messaging folder, select a message and press 

2 Select a file and press 

Key Assignments

	Whole Images	Zoom to view the whole page
	Vertical/Horizontal	Rotate page 90 degrees counterclockwise (press again to return)
	Up	Scroll up
	Down	Scroll down
	Left	Scroll left
	Right	Scroll right
	Upper Left	View upper left portion of page
	Full Screen	View document in full screen
	Upper Right	View upper right portion of page
	Zoom Out	Zoom out
	Centre	View page centre
	Zoom In	Zoom in
	Lower Left	View lower left portion of page
	Select Page	Jump to specified page <input type="checkbox"/> Enter page number  Press <input type="checkbox"/>
	Lower Right	View lower right portion of page
	Help	View a summary of key assignments
	Next Page	Open the next page
	Previous Page	Open the previous page
	Fit Images	Zoom to fit width

Barcode

Scan printed barcodes with mobile camera or download/exchange QR Codes via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.

- Scan UPC (JAN) or QR Codes. Handset automatically detects code type and reads data.
- In Continuous mode, scan up to 50 UPC (JAN) or 16 QR Codes at one time. In some cases, continuous scans may be disrupted depending on barcode data or data size.
- Zoom is not available.

Note ►

- Scan may fail if the barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan barcodes under adequate light.
- Capture one barcode at a time; otherwise scan may fail.

Tip ►

- A UPC (Universal Product Code) or JAN (Japanese Article Number) is a series of varying width vertical lines (bars) and spaces. Bars and spaces together are elements, combinations of which represent different numbers. Handset cannot read other one-dimensional barcodes (ITF Code, Code39, Codabar/NW-7, etc.).
- A QR (Quick Response) Code is a matrix symbology consisting of an array of nominally square cells, which allows omni-directional reading of up to 4,296 alphanumeric and byte data, as well as kanji and kana.

1 Frame barcode in the centre of Display

- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector (see P.1-7 28) to Macro (M).
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.

Use to adjust brightness.

To activate or cancel Continuous mode, press Options ▶ Select **Continuous Scan** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press

To open Help (Key Assignments), press .
 ▶ Press to return.



2 Press

Mobile camera scans the barcode.

- If recognition takes time, move handset slowly and adjust the distance from barcode.

Press **Cancel** to stop scan ▶ Start over from Step 1

3 Barcode recognition tone sounds and scan results appear

Using Scan Results: see P.11-20 - 11-21

To start over, press ▶ Choose **Yes**
 ▶ Press ▶ Repeat from Step 1



Continuous Mode

- After scanning, **Scan completed. Scan new?** appears.
 - To scan next code, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ▶ **Frame the code on Display** ▶ Press
 - To exit, choose **No** ▶ Press ▶ **Scan results appear**

Split Data

- After scanning, **Split data. Scan next symbol?** appears.
 - To scan next code, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ▶ **Frame the code on Display** ▶ Press
 - To exit, choose **No** ▶ Press ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.
- The scanning status appears on the first line of Display. For example, indicates that 1 of 4 codes has been scanned.

Using Scan Results

Place Calls¹	Select a number starting with TEL: ² ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ The number appears ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Send Mail³	Select a mail address including @ ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 5 on P.13-8 .)
Quote & Send Mail	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Send Message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select S! Mail or SMS ⁴ ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.13-7 or on P.13-8 .) ■ To use a part of text, press <input type="checkbox"/> Cut in Send Message window ➔ Select the first character of text ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Save to Phone Book^{1,3}	Select a number starting with TEL: ² or mail address including @ ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Save to Ph.Book ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select As New Entry ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4
Access Internet Sites⁵	Select a URL starting with http:// or rtsp:// Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Handset connects to the Internet
Save to Data Folder (Images & Melodies)	Select an image or melody file ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select To Data Folder ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Saving	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Save ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • Save up to 10 items. • To open saved items, see P.11-21 "Scanned Results".
Use for System Graphics	Select an image ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select As System ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select an item ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Copy Text	Text	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Copy ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select the first character of text ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
	URL⁵	Select a URL starting with http:// or rtsp:// ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Copy URL ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
	Mail Address³	Select a mail address including @ ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Copy Address ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
	Phone Number¹	Select a number starting with TEL: ² ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Copy Telephone ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Wallpaper	Select an image ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select As Wallpaper ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ■ For images smaller or larger than Display, select Centred , Full Screen or Fit Image ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> (For Display size images or Centred , use <input type="checkbox"/> to zoom in/out or press <input type="checkbox"/> to rotate.)	
Open Images or Play Melodies	Select an image or melody file ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>	
Open Properties	Select an image or melody file ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Property ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>	

¹Available when text is in **TEL: #** format.

²Text strings of 10 to 32 digits starting with 0 are recognised as phone numbers.

³Available when text is in **#@#** format.

⁴S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if text exceeds the SMS character limit.

⁵Available when text is in **http://#** or **rtsp://#** format.

• # represents one or more alphanumerics.

MEMORY: or MAILTO:

- When **MEMORY:** or **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book Details or SMS/S! Mail messages. However, text after an invalid character is not underlined and is not copied.

Scanning during Text Entry Scan barcodes during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **Options** → **Select Scan** → Press → **Select Scan Code** → Press → **Frame barcode in the centre of Display** → Press → Press

- To use a part of text, press **Cut** → Select the first character of text → Press → Select the end point → Press

Note ► Barcodes/text cannot be scanned when:

- Entering text during a call
- Entering text in Reading window (E-Book)
- SI Application is active

Open Barcode Read saved barcode images in Data Folder

Main Menu ► **Tools** → **Tools 3** (≡) → **Barcode** → **Data Folder**

Select a barcode image → Press

- For split data, choose **Yes** → Press
 - To cancel, choose **No** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
- When scanning fails, press → Select next barcode image manually → Press

- Note** ►
- Resized QR Codes may be invalid.
 - When invalid, **This data may be incorrect.** appears.

Scanned Results Open files saved in Scanned Results

Main Menu ► **Tools** → **Tools 3** (≡) → **Barcode** → **Scanned Results**

Select a file → Press

- To open properties, select a file → Press **Options** → Select **Information** → Press
 - Press to return.
 - To delete files, select one → Press **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
- Opened results cannot be re-saved.
 - Some files such as large images may not open.

Create QR Codes

Create QR Codes from entered text, Phone Book, Pictures, Ring Songs-Tones, and Text Templates.

- Save up to the equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji per QR Code.
- Large items are divided into maximum of 16 QR Codes.
- Created QR Codes are saved to Data Folder (Pictures). To open them, see **P.8-4**.

Phone Book

Encode name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses, address and note

Main Menu

▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (☰) ▶ *Barcode* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Phone Book*

Select an entry ▶ **Press** ▶ **QR Code appears** ▶ **Press**

- Only name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses, address and note are encoded.

Text Input

Enter and encode text

Main Menu

▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (☰) ▶ *Barcode* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Text Input*

Enter text ▶ **Press** ▶ **QR Code appears** ▶ **Press**

Data Folder

Encode melody/image files or Text Templates in Data Folder

Main Menu

▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (☰) ▶ *Barcode* ▶ *Create QR Code* ▶ *Data Folder*

Select a folder ▶ **Press** ▶ **Select an item** ▶ **Press** ▶ **QR Code appears** ▶ **Press**

Switching Storage Media

- While created QR Code appears, press **Options** ▶ **Select Save To** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Select Phone or Memory Card** ▶ **Press**

Attaching to S! Mail

- While created QR Code appears, press **Options** ▶ **Select Send As** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Perform from Step 3 on P.13-8**

Incoming Calls while Creating QR Code

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Text Scanner

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or roman letters) with mobile camera.

- Scan up to 256 characters continuously.
- Scan up to 60 single-byte characters within 3 lines. Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Some symbols may not be read.
- Text mode is set to **Auto** each time Text Scanner is activated. Change the mode if text is distorted in **Auto** (such as white text in black background).
- Zoom is not available.

- Note** ▶
- Text Scanner will not activate if music is playing; when **Stop music?** appears, choose **Yes** and press to proceed.
 - Text Scanner will not activate if an S! Application is active.

1 Frame text on Display

- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.
- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector (see P.1-7 28) according to text size.
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.

Use [] to adjust brightness.

To switch text mode, press [Options]

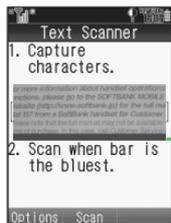
▶ Select **Reversed Text** ▶ Press []

▶ Select **Auto**, **Normal** or **Reversed**

▶ Press []

To open Help (Key Assignments), press [0P+]

▪ Press [] to exit.



Focus Adjustment Bar
(Better focus in darker blue)

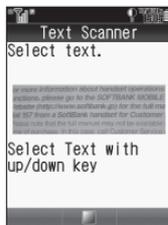
2 Press []

Text Scanner reads the text.

Press [SCAN] to stop scan ▶ Start over from Step 1

3 Use [] to select a line and press []

- Text Scanner reads one line per scan.



4 Scan results appear

Handset automatically registers scan results as a URL, Email Address, Phone Number or Text; if incorrect, change mode.

- If text exceeds limit, results appear with overage truncated.

To change mode, press [Options] ▶ Select **Change Mode** ▶ Press [] ▶ Select a type ▶ Press [] (Scan results and alternatives list change accordingly.)

To edit, press [Options] ▶ Select **Select/Edit** ▶ Press [] ▶ Select the character to edit ▶ Select an alternative from the list or enter the correction directly from Keypad

To start over, press [SCAN] ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press [] ▶ Repeat from Step 1

5 Press []

- To use scan results, see P.11-20.

Scanning More Text

After Step 5, press [Options] ▶ Select **Continue Part** or **Scan More** ▶ Press []

• Continue Part

Select **Continue Part** to enter additional text. (Mode remains the same.)

• Scan More

Select **Scan More** to enter text after a line break.

■ **Continue Part** and **Scan More** are disabled once 256 characters have been scanned.

Scanning during Text Entry Scan text during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **Options** ➔ **Select Scan** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Text Scanner** ➔ Press ➔ **Frame text in the centre of Display** ➔ Press ➔ **Select a line** ➔ Press ➔ Press

- To change mode or edit scan results, see Step 4 on P.11-23.

Stopwatch

Record elapsed time for up to 24 hours (23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds) in 0.1-second increments.

Use lap time feature to segment elapsed time.

- Save times (including the last four lap times) to handset Text Templates.
- Stopwatch is disabled when battery is low. Stopwatch ends when battery runs low.

Main Menu ➤ **Tools** ➤ **Tools 2** () ➤ **Stopwatch**

1 Press

Stopwatch starts.

- To record Lap times, press **LAP**.
 - The last four Lap times are recorded. The records are deleted when Stopwatch is cancelled.

2 Press to stop countdown

- To save the records to Text Template, press **Options** ➔ **Select Save to Templates** ➔ Press
 - To check saved records, open Text Templates (see P.11-26).
- Press to resume.
- To clear the records, press **Options** ➔ **Select Reset** ➔ Press

3 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

- Tip** ➤
- Records are deleted when Stopwatch is cancelled. Save records to Text Templates.
 - Stopwatch setting is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
 - Alarm is disabled while Stopwatch window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

Countdown Timer

Set Countdown Timer up to 60 minutes in 1-second increments. Alarm Tone sounds and Small Light flashes when set time elapses.

Main Menu ➤ **Tools** ➤ **Tools 2** () ➤ **Countdown Timer**

1 Enter time (00:01 - 60:00) and press

- To edit entered time, use to move cursor and enter correct time. If is already pressed, follow the steps below.
- When times over 60 minutes (60:00) are entered, the last set time returns.

■ To change time, press **Edit** ➔ Enter time ➔ Press

2 Press

Countdown starts.

3 Press **[Mute]** to stop countdown

Press **[Mute]** to resume.

To reset, stop countdown and press **[Envelope]** **Reset**.

4 To exit, press **[CLEAR/BACK]** then choose **Yes** and press **[Mute]**

Countdown Timer End

■ Tone sounds according to **General Volume** setting.

- Alarm stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press **[X]** **Cancel** to stop manually.
- In Manner mode, Manner settings take priority.
- When the set timer time has elapsed during a call, **Timer Expired** appears after **[End Call]** is pressed to end the call.

- Tip** ▶
- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
 - Alarm is disabled while Countdown Timer window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

Expenses Memo

Use Expenses Memo to add expenses, such as travel expenses. Enter up to 30 entries (up to 29,999,999.70 yen in total, 999,999.99 yen per entry).

Add New Expense

Enter monetary figure and categorise it

Main Menu

▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 3** (F3) ▶ **Expenses Memo** ▶ **Add New Expense**

Enter amount ▶ **Press [Mute]** ▶ **Select a category** ▶ **Press [Mute]**

■ Shortcut: In Standby, enter amount ▶ Press **[Mute]** ▶ Press **[Mute]** ▶ Select a category ▶ Press **[Mute]**

- The entry date, category and figure are saved.
- If Clock is unset, entry date and time will be saved as --/-- --:--.

Totals

Check entries

Main Menu

▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 3** (F3) ▶ **Expenses Memo**

Select Totals ▶ **Press [Mute]**

■ Use **[Up]** to scroll through entries.

■ To change category, select an entry ▶ Press **[Mute]** ▶ Select a category ▶ Press **[Mute]**

■ To enter custom category name, select **Other** in category list ▶ Press **[Mute]** ▶ Enter name (up to 14 characters) ▶ Press **[Mute]** (Preset category names are not affected.)

■ To change entry amount, select an entry ▶ Press **[Envelope]** **Options** ▶ Select **Change Amount** ▶ Press **[Mute]** ▶ Edit ▶ Press **[Mute]**

■ To delete an entry, select one ▶ Press **[Envelope]** **Options** ▶ Select **Delete Item** ▶ Press **[Mute]** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **[Mute]**

■ To delete all entries, select an entry ▶ Press **[Envelope]** **Options** ▶ Select **Delete All** ▶ Press **[Mute]** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **[Mute]**

Edit Category

Rename categories

Main Menu

▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 3** (F3) ▶ **Expenses Memo**

Select Edit Category ▶ **Press [Mute]** ▶ **Select a category** ▶ **Press [Mute]** ▶ **Edit** ▶ **Press [Mute]**

- Enter up to 14 characters.

Text Templates

Save frequently used phrases for use in mail message, etc.
Save up to 60 entries of up to 1,536 characters each.

New Entry

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (☰) ▶ Text Templates ▶ <Add New Entry>

1 Enter text and press

Tip ▶ To paste saved text into text entry windows, see **P.3-14** "Using Text Templates".

Opening Templates

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (☰) ▶ Text Templates

1 Select a file and press

Press **Back** to return.

Editing Templates

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (☰) ▶ Text Templates

1 Select a file and press **Options**

2 Select *Edit* and press

3 Edit text and press

File is overwritten.

Deleting Templates

Delete single Text Templates.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (☰) ▶ Text Templates ▶ *Select a file* ▶ Options (☰) ▶ Delete

1 Choose Yes and press

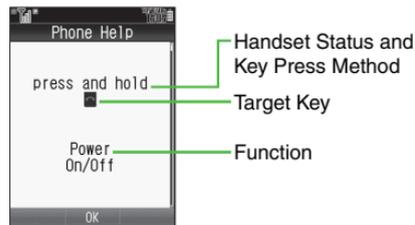
Phone Help

Learn when/how to use Keypad functions/shortcuts.
Most Phone Help functions are inaccessible from menu items.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (☰)

1 Select *Phone Help* and press

Phone Help window opens.



2 Use to toggle guides

• Alternatively, press **#+*** or ***#+**.

3 Press to exit

Optional Services

Optional Services Overview

- When **out** appears, access services from a touch-tone landline.
- For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

Call Forwarding	When you know you won't be able to receive calls made to handset, automatically divert incoming calls to another phone number (see right)
Voicemail	Set handset to forward all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Centre. Access caller messages from handset in service area or from a touch-tone phone anywhere (see P.12-4). Missed Call Notification Records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.
Call Waiting*	Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls when the line is already engaged. After the tone, place the current call on hold and answer the second, or alternate between calls (see P.12-5).
Conference Call*	Open a second line while the first is engaged. Switch back and forth between two lines or talk on both simultaneously. Add other parties to an existing conversation and talk on up to five lines simultaneously (see P.12-6).
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions (see P.12-7)
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls (see P.12-10)

*An additional contract is required.

Call Forwarding

- Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.
- Call Forwarding and Voicemail are not available when **All Outgoing Calls** or **All Incoming Calls** in Call Barring is active.

Call Forwarding	Initiate Call Forwarding
Main Menu	▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Voicemail/Divert ▶ Diverts

Direct Entry

- Select a call type ▶ Press ▶ Select **Always or No Answer** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Enter Number** ▶ Press ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Press
- For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press
 - Include dialling code for landline numbers.

Phone Book

- Select a call type ▶ Press ▶ Select **Always or No Answer** ▶ Press ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ▶ Press
- For entries with multiple numbers, select an entry ▶ Press ▶ Select a number ▶ Press ▶ Press
 - For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press

Incoming Calls while Call Forwarding is Active

- To answer calls, press  while handset is ringing/vibrating.
 - When **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for calls.

Note ► Phone Numbers Beginning with the Following Numbers Cannot be Saved:

- **1** (Public Service Numbers: 110, 119, 118, etc.)
- **00** (International call numbers: 001, 0041, etc.)
- **0120** (Toll-free numbers)
- **0990** (Fee-based services: Dial Q2, etc.)

Forwarding Video Calls

Video Calls are forwarded only to Video Call-compatible devices that comply with 3G-324M.

Tip ► Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Call Forwarding together with Answer Phone (see P.2-9).

Example: Ring time for Call Forwarding: 10 seconds

Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

Cancel All

Cancel Call Forwarding

Main Menu

► Settings ► Call/Video Call () ► Voicemail/Divert

Select **Cancel All** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 

- Cancel All also cancels Voicemail.

Status

Check Call Forwarding status

Main Menu

► Settings ► Call/Video Call () ► Voicemail/Divert

Select **Status** ► Press 

- Call Forwarding status appears.
 - Press  to return.

Voicemail

- Calls are diverted to Voicemail Centre via Call Forwarding function; Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.
- Call Forwarding and Voicemail are not available when **All Outgoing Calls** or **All Incoming Calls** in Call Barring is active.
- For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.19-28).
- Activate Missed Call Notification (see P.12-5) for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range.

Voicemail

Initiate Voicemail

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Voicemail/
Divert ▶ Voicemail ▶ Activate

Select **Always or No Answer** ▶ Press

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press

Incoming Calls while Voicemail is Active

- To answer calls, press while handset is ringing/vibrating.
 - When **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for calls.

Tip ▶ Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Voicemail together with Answer Phone (see P.2-9).

Example: Ring time for Voicemail: 10 seconds

Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

Cancel All

Cancel Voicemail

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Voicemail/
Divert

Select **Cancel All** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶
Press

- Cancel All also cancels Call Forwarding.

Call Voicemail

Check Voicemail messages

Main Menu

▶ Phone

Select **Call Voicemail** ▶ Press

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to Voicemail Centre.
- Alternatively, follow these steps in Standby.
 - Press ▶ Select **Phone** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Call Voicemail** ▶ Press
 - Press ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select **Call/Video Call** ▶ Select **Voicemail/Divert** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Voicemail** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Call Voicemail** ▶ Press

Tip ▶ appears when new messages are recorded, and disappears after they are checked from handset.

Status

Check Voicemail status

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☰) ▶ Voicemail/
Divert

Select **Status** ▶ Press

- Voicemail status appears.
Press to return.

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

Activate/
Cancel

Activate or cancel Missed Call Notification

Main Menu

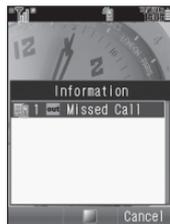
▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☰)

Select **out Missed Calls** ▶ Press ▶ Press

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to the Network.

Retrieving Missed Call Notification Records

- Missed Call Notification records are stored at the Centre. When handset is turned on or comes into range, Information window (see P.2-7) appears with Missed Call records.
 - Information window may take some time to open.



Call Waiting

An additional contract is required.

Call Waiting
On/Off

Activate or cancel Call Waiting

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☰) ▶ Call Waiting

Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press

Incoming Calls

Place Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2

When a tone sounds during a call, press .

- Press to switch between two lines.

Closing Handset while Someone is on Hold

- All lines are disconnected.

Pressing while Someone is on Hold

- Active line ends and handset re-engages the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

- Short beeps sound. To re-engage the party on hold:

Press **Options** ▶ Select **Retrieve** ▶ Press

12

Optional Services

- Tip** ▶
- Handset does not ring or vibrate for incoming calls while a line is engaged. A tone sounds from Earpiece.
 - When Voicemail or Call Forwarding is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voicemail Centre or the forwarding number. When active service is set to **Always** Call Waiting is disabled.

Status

Check Call Waiting status

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Waiting**Select Status** ▶ Press 

- Call Waiting status appears.
- Press  to return.

Conference Call

An additional contract is required.

Dial New Number

Open another line during a call

Enter a phone number during a call ▶ Press 

- Line 2 is open. Line 1 is placed on hold.
- Press  to select a number from Phone Book or press  for 1+ seconds to select from Call Log.

Swap Calls

Switch between two open lines

During a call, press .

- The line switches. The other line is placed on hold.

Closing Handset while Someone is on Hold

- All lines are disconnected.

Pressing  while Someone is on Hold

- Active line ends and handset re-engages the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

- Short beeps sound. To re-engage the party on hold:

Press  **Options** ▶ **Select Retrieve** ▶ **Press** **Conference Call**

Use up to five lines simultaneously

Press  **Options** **while switching between two lines**▶ **Select Multi Party** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Select****Conference All** ▶ **Press** 

- To switch to private conference during Conference Call, select a number/name ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Private** ▶ Press 
- The other lines are placed on hold.
- To switch back to Conference Call during private conference or after opening a new line, press  **Options** ▶ **Select Multi Party** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select Conference All** ▶ Press 

Ending Calls during Conference Call

- All lines are disconnected.

Some Lines End during Conference Call

- Other lines remain connected.

Call Barring

Restrict incoming/outgoing Voice Calls, Video Calls or SMS messages.

Following restrictions are available:

Outgoing Calls	All Outgoing Calls	Restrict all non-emergency calls
	Bar Int'l Call ¹	Allow only domestic calls
	Only Local & Home ²	Restrict all international calls except to Japan
Incoming Calls	All Incoming Calls	Reject all calls
	Bar if Abroad	Reject calls when outside Japan

¹Example: While in the UK, place domestic calls only.

²Example: While in the UK, place calls domestically or to Japan.

Alternatively, restrict calls by number/Caller ID availability.

Rejected Numbers	Reject calls from designated numbers
	Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book
	Reject calls without Caller ID
	Reject calls from public phones
	Reject calls with undisplayable Caller ID

- Note** ▶
- Network Password selected at initial subscription (see **P.1-26**) is required to change Call Barring settings.
 - If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Centre Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).
 - **All Outgoing Calls** and **All Incoming Calls** are disabled when Call Forwarding or Voicemail is active.

Tip ▶ If call is attempted when Call Barring is active, **Call Barred**. appears. It may take longer to appear in some areas. Check Call Barring settings if the message does not appear.

Restricting Outgoing Calls

Set/Cancel Restriction

Set or cancel restriction of outgoing calls

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Outgoing Calls*

Each Restriction

Select restriction ▶ Press ▶ Choose *On (set) or Off*
▶ Press ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press

Cancelling All Restrictions

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press

Tip ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when outgoing calls are restricted. See P.2-3 "Emergency Calls".

Status

Check Call Barring status for outgoing calls

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Outgoing Calls*

Select restriction ▶ Press ▶ Select *Status* ▶ Press

- Caller Barring status appears.
■ Press to return.

Restricting Incoming Calls

Set/Cancel Restriction

Set or cancel restriction of incoming calls

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Incoming Calls*

Each Restriction

Select restriction ▶ Press ▶ Choose *On (set) or Off*
▶ Press ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press

Cancelling All Restrictions

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press

Status

Check Call Barring status for incoming calls

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ▶ *Call Barring* ▶ *Incoming Calls*

Select restriction ▶ Press ▶ Select *Status* ▶ Press

- Caller Barring status appears.
■ Press to return.

Rejecting a Call

Set Reject Number

Designate phone numbers to reject

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Black List ▶ Set Reject Number

Adding Numbers

Select <empty> ▶ Press ▶ Enter a number ▶ Press

- To select from Phone Book, select <empty> ▶ Press Options ▶ Select **Ph.Book List** ▶ Press ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press
 - For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press
 - Name appears for numbers saved in Phone Book.
- To select from Call Log, select <empty> ▶ Press Options ▶ Select **From Call Log** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select a type ▶ Select a record ▶ Press

Editing Numbers

Select an entry ▶ Press ▶ Edit the number ▶ Press

Deleting Numbers

Select an entry ▶ Press Options ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Tip ▶ Designate numbers to reject then set Switch On/Off to **On**.

Switch On/Off

Reject calls from designated numbers

Default:Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Black List ▶ Switch On/Off

Choose **On** (reject) or **Off** ▶ Press

Unknown

Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book

Default:Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Unknown

Choose **On** (reject) or **Off** ▶ Press

Withheld

Reject calls without Caller ID

Default:Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Withheld

Choose **On** (reject) or **Off** ▶ Press

Payphone

Reject calls from public phones

Default:Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Payphone

Choose **On** (reject) or **Off** ▶ Press

Unavailable

Reject calls with undisplayable Caller ID

Default:Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Unavailable

Choose **On** (reject) or **Off** ▶ Press

Changing Network Password

Change NW
Password

Change Network Password

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶
Change NW Password

Enter current Network Password ▶ Press ▶

Enter new Network Password ▶ Press ▶ Enter

new Network Password again ▶ Press

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when placing calls. Regardless of this setting, sending or blocking Caller ID can be selected for each call. Enter the following numbers/symbols before a phone number when placing a call.

Send	1 8 6 or * 3 1 #
Block	1 8 4 or # 3 3 1 #

Show My
Number

Send or block Caller ID

Default On

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Show My
Number

Choose **On** (send) or **Off** ▶ Press

Status

Check Caller ID status

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Show My
Number

Select **Status** ▶ Press

- Caller ID status appears.
▶ Press to return.

Messaging

Basics

Use SMS and S! Mail domestically and outside Japan.
Create Arrange Mail or Feeling Mail from S! Mail.

SMS

Exchange short text messages of up to 160 alphanumeric with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange text messages of up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible SoftBank handsets, other mobiles and PCs, etc. Attach image/sound files.

Arrange Mail

Select font colour, font size, background colour; insert images, background sound, and more (see **P.13-12**).

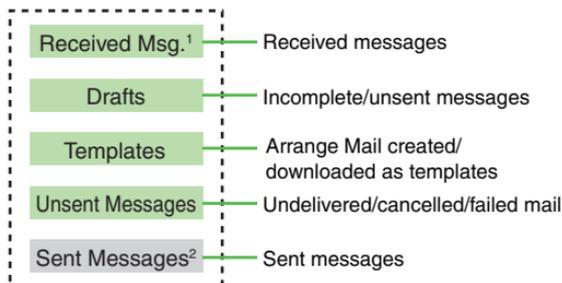
Feeling Mail

Ringtones, Vibration and Small Light response varies by the emotion set by sender (see **P.13-15**, **P.13-20** - **13-21**).

- Tip ▶**
- An additional contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
 - Address questions about messaging to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

Messaging Folders

Messages are organised in folders by type.



¹ **Received Folder** and **Folder 1 - Folder 7** (My Folders) appear within when Received Msg. View (see **P.13-5**) is set to **Folder View**. **Spam Folder** appears as well if Anti Spam Measures (see **P.13-35**) is active.

² **Sent Folder** and **Folder 1 - Folder 7** (My Folders) appear within when Sent Msg. View (see **P.13-5**) is set to **Folder View**.

Memory Status

- Press **[]** → Select *Messaging* → Press **[]** → Select *Memory Status* → Press **[]** → Select *Received Msg., Sent Total, Sent Msg., Drafts or Unsent Msg.* → Press **[]**
 - Press **[]** to return.
- Save up to 4 MB or 1,000 messages in Received Msg. folder. Handset stores up to 2 MB or 500 messages between Sent Messages, Drafts and Unsent Messages.
- A notice appears when Messaging Folder memory is low.
- Templates memory usage is reflected in memory status of Other Documents in Data Folder (see **P.8-2**).

Window Description

Messaging Folder Contents

Select a Messaging folder and press **[]** to open it.

Message Type/Status

• Message Status:

	Unread		Read
	Sent		Failed
	Replied		Forwarded
	SI Mail Notice		Unread Delivery Report
	Send Reservation set*		

SMS appears below SMS messages (SMS).

* Send Reservation messages are saved to Unsent Messages folder.

• Message Settings:

	Attachments		Protected
	Priority (High)		Priority (Low)
	SMS Mail on USIM Card		

Sender or Recipient

- Number, address or name appears.

Message Text



- Tip** ▶
- Follow these steps to sort messages.
 Press **☑** **Options** ▶ **Select View Settings** ▶
 Press **▣** ▶ **Select Sort** ▶ Press **▣** ▶ **Select an option** ▶ Press **▣**
 - To change message list view, see right.

Message Contents

Select a message and press **▣** to open it.

Labels for the message preview:

- Message Number**: Points to '008'.
- Sender or Recipient**: Points to 'Kitayama Kaoru'.
- Subject (S! Mail only)**: Points to 'Wedding'.
- Received or Sent Date & Time**: Points to '10/12 15:05'.
- Message Text**: Points to the main body of the message.

• Number, address or name appears.

- Tip** ▶
- To activate Display Backlight, press **0** **☑** - **9** **☑**.
 - Press **#** **☑** to open previous message (older one), or press ***** **☑** to open next one (newer one).

Views

Message List Views

Four message list views are shown:

- Two-line**: Shows sender and subject in two lines.
- Sender+Preview**: Shows sender and a preview of the message text.
- Subjects+Preview**: Shows subject and a preview of the message text.
- Sender**: Shows only the sender's name.

Message List View is **Sender+Preview** by default. Follow these steps to switch view.

Main Menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **General Settings**

- 1** Select **Message List View** and press **▣**
- 2** Select a view and press **▣**

Sending Text Messages

- Create Contact Groups beforehand to send the same message to multiple recipients at one time (see **P.4-12**).
- Save frequently used numbers/addresses to Speed Mail List (see **P.13-34**).
- Use Multi Job (see **P.1-25**) to view other messages while creating a message.

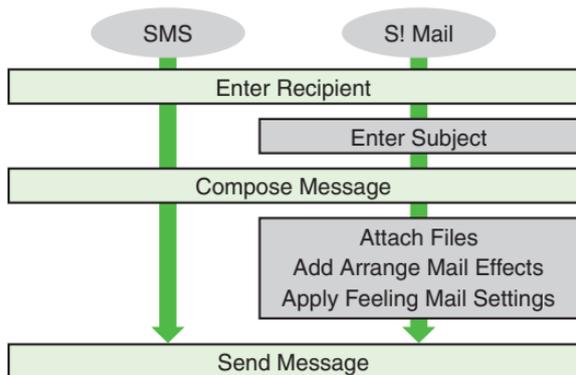
Basics

Available entry limits vary by Message Type.

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachments
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

Mail Composition Overview



Character Entry Limits

Character entry limit varies by Message Type.

SMS	160 single-byte alphanumerics
S! Mail	Approximately 30,000 single-byte alphanumerics

- For SMS, only single-byte alphanumeric entry is available when Char-code (see **P.13-37**) is **GSM 7bit**.
- Send up to 300 KB including message text via S! Mail. Message text character limit differs by attachment size or number of recipients.
- Approximate mail size appears in Mail Composition window (see **P.13-7**).

Creating & Sending SMS Mail

1 Press **[M]**, select *Messaging* and press **[M]**

- Alternatively, press **[M]** in Standby.

2 Select *Create New SMS* and press **[M]**

Mail Composition window opens.

3 Select recipient field and press **[M]**

Entering Recipients: see P.13-10

4 Enter recipients

To enter a recipient, perform Step 4 on P.13-8.

- *Enter Address* is not available for SMS.

5 Press **[M]** then enter a message

Alternatively, enter the first character; message text entry window opens automatically.

Entering Characters: see P.3-5

6 Press **[M]**

For more, see Step 8 on P.13-9.

7 Press **[M]** **Send**



SMS Mail
Composition Window

Converting SMS Mail to S! Mail

1 In SMS Mail Composition window, press **[M]** **Options** → Select *Change To S! Mail* → Press **[M]** → Choose *Yes* → Press **[M]**

- A confirmation appears.
 - To convert to S! Mail, choose *Yes* → Press **[M]**
- Message text exceeding SMS character limit remains after converting to S! Mail.

Creating & Sending S! Mail

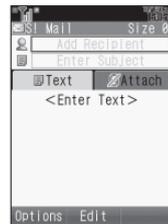
1 Press **[M]**, select *Messaging* and press **[M]**

- Alternatively, press **[M]** in Standby.

2 Select *Create Message* and press **[M]**

Mail Composition window opens.

- Shortcut: In Standby, press **[M]** for 1+ seconds



S! Mail
Composition Window

3 Select recipient field and press

Select Recipient window opens.

 Entering Recipients: see P.13-10

4 Phone Book

1 Select *Phone Book* and press

2 Select a recipient and press

 To search Phone Book, perform Steps 2 - 3 in "Dialling from Phone Book" on P.4-8.

 When multiple items are saved, select one \rightarrow Press 

Contact Groups (see P.4-12)

1 Select *Select Group* and press

2 Select a Group and press

 Press  to return. Omit this step when only one member is saved.

 To add recipients (when multiple members are saved), select **Add Recipient** \rightarrow Press  \rightarrow Repeat Step 4 \rightarrow Press 

Sent Mail Records

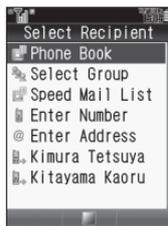
1 Select a recipient and press

 Sent mail records are names, phone numbers or mail addresses with the corresponding indicators (📞, etc.).

Speed Mail List (see P.13-34)

1 Select *Speed Mail List* and press

2 Select a recipient and press



Select Address Window

Direct Entry

1 Select *Enter Number* or *Enter Address* and press

2 Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number or mail address and press

5 Select subject field and press

Subject entry window opens. Alternatively, enter the first character to open subject entry window.

 To edit recipients, see P.13-10 "Entering Recipients".

6 Enter subject and press

 Enter up to 512 single-byte alphanumeric.

7 Select *Text* and press then enter a message

 Entering Characters: see P.3-5

 After entering My Pictogram from My Pict History, Arrange Mail Composition window (see P.13-12) opens automatically.

 Creating Arrange Mail: see P.13-12

 To enter Signature, press  **Options** \rightarrow Select **Advanced** \rightarrow Press  \rightarrow Select **Signature** \rightarrow Press 

 Activate Auto Insert (see P.13-36) to enter Signature automatically.

8 Press

- To edit the message, select message text field → Press  → Edit → Press 
- To delete the message, select message text field → Press  **Options** → Select **Remove Text** → Press 
- To preview 3D Pictogram, select message text field → Press  **Options** → Select **3D Pictogram** → Press 
 - Preview how the message appears on 3D Pictogram-compatible recipient handsets.
- Delivery Options: see **P.13-16**
- Creating Feeling Mail: see **P.13-15**
- Send Reservation: see **P.13-17**
- Saving to Drafts: see **P.13-18**



9 Attach files

- Attaching Files: see **P.13-10**

10 Press **Send**

- Message is sent even if handset is closed.
- To cancel, press  **Cancel**.
 - Message is not sent if cancelled quick enough.

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Sending from Phone Book Entries

- Open a Phone Book entry and follow these steps.
 - Phone Numbers
 - Select a number → Press  → Select **Create Message** → Press  → Select **S! Mail or SMS** → Press  → Perform from Step 5 on P.13-8 or on P.13-7
 - Mail Addresses
 - Select a mail address → Press  → Perform from Step 5 on P.13-8

When Recipient Handset is Off or Out-of-Range

- Messages are stored in Server Mail Box, and delivered when recipient handset detects signal.
 - To select storage period, see **P.13-37** "Expiry Time". Messages are deleted if not received by the specified Expiry Time.

Delivery Failure

- Information window opens ( appears) for delivery failure.
 - To send unsent messages, press  → Select a message → Press 
- Activate Auto Resend (see **P.13-35**) to reattempt to send unsent messages automatically up to two times.
 - If messages are not sent after two Automatic Resend attempts, follow the above steps to send manually.
 - Automatic Resend may send the same message twice.

Entering Recipients

- To add recipients, open Mail Composition window (see P.13-7) and follow these steps.
 - Select recipient field → Press → Select **Add Recipient** → Press → Perform from Step 4 on P.13-7 or on P.13-8
 - Press to return.
 - Enter up to 20 recipients in total.
- To switch recipient status between To, Cc (carbon copy) and Bcc (blind carbon copy), open S! Mail Composition window and follow these steps.
 - Select recipient field → Press → Select a recipient → Press **Options** → Select **Change to To, Change to Cc or Change to Bcc** → Press
 - Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.
- To change/edit, open Mail Composition window (see P.13-7) and follow these steps.
 - Select recipient field → Press → Select a recipient → Press → Edit → Press
 - Press to return.
- To delete, open Mail Composition window (see P.13-7) and follow these steps.
 - Select recipient field → Press → Select a recipient → Press **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press
 - To delete all, select **Delete All** instead of **Delete** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
 - Press to return.

Note ► When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana or Pictograms in message text and subject. They may not appear properly on recipient devices.

Attaching Files

Attach images, sound files, vFiles (Phone Book/schedule entries), etc. to S! Mail messages.

- Attach up to 20 files or 300 KB including message text.
- Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets (file format, services, etc.) before sending files.
- Follow these steps after Step 8 on P.13-9; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

1 Select **Attach**

2 Select **Attach File** and press

► Alternatively, press **Options** → Select **Attach File** → Press

3 **Image Files**

1 Select **Picture** and press

2 Select a folder and press

- To capture an image, select **Take Picture** → Press → Press to shoot → Press (Omit the next step.)
 - When confirmation for save location appears, select a location → Press

3 Select a file and press

- For large JPEG images, select attachment size → Press
- To change image size, select attached image → Press **Options** → Select **Resize Picture** → Press → Select a size → Press
- Resize Picture is not available when Multi Job is active or when a non-JPEG (.jpg) image is selected.

Sound Files

- 1 Select **Sound** and press
- 2 Select a folder and press
 - To record sound, select **Record Voice** → Press → Press to start recording → Press to stop → Select **Accept** → Press → Select **To Phone Memory** or **To Memory Card** → Press (Omit the next step.)
- 3 Select a file and press

Video Files

- 1 Select **Video** and press
- 2 Select **Saved Videos** and press
 - To record video, select **Record Video** → Press → Press to start recording → Press to stop → Select **Accept** → Press → Select **To Phone Memory** or **To Memory Card** → Press (Omit the next step.)
- 3 Select a file and press

Flash®/Flash® Ringtone Files (see P.8-7)

- 1 Select **Flash®** or **Flash® Ringtone** and press
- 2 Select a file and press

Phone Book Entries

- 1 Select **Attach Contact** and press
- 2 Select an entry and press

Schedule Entries

- 1 Select **Attach Appointment** and press
- 2 Select a date with schedule and press
- 3 Select an entry and press

Templates

- 1 Select **Templates** and press
- 2 Select a file and press

Books

- 1 Select **Books** and press
- 2 Select a file and press

Other Files

- 1 Select **Others** and press
- 2 Select a file and press

Deleting Attachments	
■	In S! Mail Composition window, select a file → Press  Options → Select Remove Item → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Adding Attachments	
■	In S! Mail Composition window, select  Attach → Select Attach File → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Perform from Step 3 on P.13-10

Creating Arrange Mail

Select font colour, font size, background colour; insert images, background sound, and more.

- Insert one sound or Flash® file per Arrange Mail.
- Enter up to 40 types of My Pictograms per Arrange Mail.
- Follow these steps in Step 7 on P.13-8; after S! Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

1 Press Options

2 Select *Arrange* and press

Arrange Mail Composition window opens.

Shortcut: Press  for 1+ seconds



Applied Effects

Arrange Menu
Use  to select an item.

Arrange Mail
Composition Window

3 Changing Font Colour

1 Select *Font Colour:* and press

2 Select a colour and press

3 Enter text

- To open Arrange menu, press .
- To change colour of entered text, press  **Select Area** → Select the start point → Press  → Select the end point → Press  → Select **Font Colour:** → Press  → Select a colour → Press 
- To change colour of all entered text, press  **Select Area** → Press  **All** → Select **Font Colour:** → Press  → Select a colour → Press 

Changing Font Size

1 Select *Font Size* and press

2 Select a size and press

3 Enter text

- To open Arrange menu, press .
- To change font size of entered text, press  **Select Area** → Select the start point → Press  → Select the end point → Press  → Select **Font Size** → Press  → Select a size → Press 
- To change font size of all entered text, press  **Select Area** → Press  **All** → Select **Font Size** → Press  → Select a size → Press 

Inserting Images

- 1 Select **Insert Picture** and press 
- 2 Select **Pictures** or **DCIM** and press 
- 3 Select a file and press 
 - To capture an image, select **Insert Picture** → Press  → Select **Take Picture** → Press  → Press  to shoot → Press  (Omit the next step.)
- 4 Use  to select target location and press 
 - Omit this step if there is no text.

Inserting My Pictograms (see P.8-7)

- 1 Select **Insert My Pictogram** and press 
- Data Folder (My Pictograms) opens.
- 2 Select a file and press 
- 3 Press 
 - Alternatively, while entering message text, press  until **History** appears → Press  to open My Pict History → Select a file → Press 
 - After entering My Pictogram, Arrange Mail Composition window opens automatically.
 - To select My Pictograms from file list, press  in My Pict History.

Inserting Background Sound

- 1 Select **Insert** and press 
- 2 Select **Insert BGM Sound** and press 
- 3 Select **Ring Songs-Tones** or **Music** and press 
- 4 Select a file and press 
 - To record sound, select **Insert** → Press  → Select **Insert BGM Sound** → Press  → Select **Record Voice** → Press  → Press  to start recording → Press  → Select **Accept** → Press  → Select save location → Press 
 - To delete inserted sound, select **Insert** → Press  → Select **Delete BGM Sound** → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 

Inserting Flash® (see P.8-7) File

- 1 Select **Insert** and press 
- 2 Select **Insert Flash** and press 
 - Data Folder (Flash®) opens.
- 3 Select a file and press 
 - To preview inserted Flash®, press  **Options** → Press  → Select **Preview** → Press 
 - To delete inserted file, press  **Input** → Move cursor before the Flash® file icon → Press 

Inserting Horizontal Lines

- 1 Select **Insert** and press 
- 2 Select **Insert Line** and press 
 - Press  to return.

Flashing Text

1 Select **Effect** and press

2 Select **Blink** and press

3 Select **Blink On** and press

4 Enter text

To flash entered text, press **Select Area** → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select **Effect** → Press → Select **Blink** → Press → Select **Blink On** → Press

To cancel, press **Select Area** → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select **Effect** → Press → Select **Blink** → Press → Select **Blink Off** → Press

Scrolling Text

1 Select **Effect** and press

2 Select **Scrolling** and press

3 Select **Right to Left** or **Swing** and press

4 Enter text

To scroll entered text, press **Select Area** → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select **Effect** → Press → Select **Scrolling** → Press → Select **Right to Left** or **Swing** → Press

To cancel, press **Select Area** → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select **Effect** → Press → Select **Scrolling** → Press → Select **Scroll Off** → Press

Aligning Text

1 Select **Effect** and press

2 Select **Alignment** and press

3 Select **Alignment Left**, **Alignment Centre** or **Alignment Right** and press

4 Enter text

To align entered text, press **Select Area** → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select **Effect** → Press → Select **Alignment** → Press → Select **Alignment Left**, **Alignment Centre** or **Alignment Right** → Press

Changing Background Colour

1 Select **Background Colour:** and press

2 Select a colour and press

Cancelling All

1 Select **Normal** and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

- All Arrange Mail settings are cancelled and S! Mail Composition window returns.

Cancelling Last Action

In Arrange Mail Composition window, select **Undo** → Press

- Does not apply to Background sound insertion/deletion.

Creating Templates

- In S! Mail Composition window, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Save as Template** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter name ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Save here..** ➔ Press 
- Entered recipients, subject and attachments are deleted.
- Templates can also be downloaded via the Internet, etc.

Creating Arrange Mail from Templates

- In Standby
 - Press  ➔ Select **Messaging** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Templates** ➔ Press  ➔ Select one ➔ Press 
 - To check Templates, select one in Templates list and press  **Options** ➔ Select **Preview** ➔ Press 
 - To switch Template name display, select one in Templates list and press  **Options** ➔ Select **Item Displayed** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **File Name** or **Title** ➔ Press 
 - To organise Templates, see P.8-7 "Managing Files & Folders".
- In S! Mail Composition Window
 - Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Launch Template** ➔ Press  ➔ Select one ➔ Press 

Creating Feeling Mail

Apply Feeling Mail setting to S! Mail; corresponding Pictogram appears to the left of subject, and recipient handset responds according to Link to Feeling settings (see P.13-20).

- Send Feeling Mail to compatible SoftBank handsets only.
- Feeling Mail Pictograms appear as standard Pictograms in subjects on incompatible recipient handsets.
- Response to Feeling Mail depends on recipients' Link to Feeling settings (see P.13-20).
- Follow these steps in Step 8 on P.13-9; after S! Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

- 1 Press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Feeling Settings** and press 
- 3 Select **Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad or Import./Notice** and press 
- 4 Select an item and press 
S! Mail Composition window returns.

Delivery Options

- Options are effective only when sent to compatible handsets.
- Settings are valid for one message.
- Follow these steps after Step 6 on **P.13-7** (for SMS) or Step 8 on **P.13-9** (for S' Mail); press to return to Mail Composition window then complete and send message.

SMS/S' Mail Delivery Option

Delivery Report

Set to receive Delivery Report (see **P.13-20**)

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Press **Options** **Select Messaging Settings** **Press** **Select Delivery Report** **Press** **Choose On or Off** **Press**

SMS Delivery Option

Expiry Time

Set a time limit to store the message in Server Mail Box

Default Maximum

Press **Options** **Select Messaging Settings** **Press** **Select Expiry Time** **Press** **Select a limit** **Press**

S! Mail Delivery Options

Reply To Settings

Designate a different mail address for receiving replies

Available when reply-to address is saved.

Press **Options** **Select Messaging Settings** **Press** **Select Reply To Settings** **Press** **Choose On or Off** **Press**

To set reply-to address, see **P.13-38** "Reply To Settings".

Priority

Set message priority

Default Normal

Press **Options** **Select Messaging Settings** **Press** **Select Priority** **Press** **Select priority** **Press**

• Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

Remote Fwd. Action

Select whether to delete Server Mail after forwarding it

Available when forwarding Server Mail (Remote Forward).

Press **Options** **Select Messaging Settings** **Press** **Select Remote Fwd. Action** **Press** **Select Not Delete or Del. After Forward** **Press**

Set Auto Delete

Set the message to be deleted from recipient handsets once read

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Press **Options** **Select Messaging Settings** **Press** **Select Set Auto Delete** **Press** **Choose On or Off** **Press**

Reply Request

Set to show a reply request

Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

Press **Options** **Select Messaging Settings** **Press** **Select Reply Request** **Press** **Choose On or Off** **Press**

Forward NG

Set to show a do not forward request

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers. Default: Off

Press **Options** → **Select Messaging Settings** →
 Press → **Select Forward NG** → Press →
 Choose **On or Off** → Press

Delete NG

Set to show a do not delete request

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers. Default: Off

Press **Options** → **Select Messaging Settings** →
 Press → **Select Delete NG** → Press → **Choose
 On or Off** → Press

Quiz

Set up a question; recipients need to answer it correctly to open the message

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers. Default: Off

Setting Up Quiz

Press **Options** → **Select Messaging Settings** → Press →
Select Quiz → Press → **Select Switch On/Off** →
 Press → **Choose On** → Press → **Select Question** →
 Press → **Enter a question** → Press → **Select Answer** →
 Press → **Enter the answer** → Press → Press **Done**

- Entered question and answer are deleted when Quiz is set to **Off**.
 - Default question (*When is my birthday?*) returns.

Editing Question/Answer

Press **Options** → **Select Messaging Settings** → Press →
 → **Select Quiz** → Press → **Select Edit Question** →
 Press → **Select Question** → Press → **Enter a
 question** → Press → **Select Answer** → Press →
Enter the answer → Press → Press **Done**

**Set Auto
Play File**

Show a comment and open/play an attached file automatically before message text is opened on recipient handsets

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers. Default: Off
- Follow these steps after Step 9 on **P.13-9**.

Activating/Canceling

Select a file → Press **Options** → **Select Set Auto
 Play File** → Press → **Select Switch On/Off** →
 Press → **Choose On or Off** → Press

- Comment is deleted when Set Auto Play File is cancelled.

Entering a Comment

Select a file → Press **Options** → **Select Set Auto
 Play File** → Press → **Select Input Message** →
 Press → **Enter text** → Press

- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Arrange Mail.

Note ► **Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz** and **Set Auto Play File** cannot be applied at the same time; select one per message.

Send Reservation

Send messages at the designated date/time in the future.

- Messages are saved to Unsent Messages folder.
- Save up to ten Send Reservation messages.
- Information window opens for successful delivery.
- Follow these steps after Step 6 on **P.13-7** (for SMS) or Step 8 on **P.13-9** (for S! Mail).

1 Press **Options**
2 Select **Send Reservation** and press

3 Select *Date & Time* and press

- To send messages ten seconds after signal returns, select **Within the Network** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

4 Enter date/time

- Select date/time within a week.

5 Choose **Yes** and press

- When Auto Resend (see P.13-35) is **Off**, failed Send Reservation messages (due to out-of-range or power-off) will not be resent.

Using Drafts

Saving to Drafts

- When memory is full, delete messages (see P.13-29) before creating new ones.
- Follow these steps after Step 6 on P.13-7 (for SMS) or Step 8 on P.13-9 (for S! Mail).

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Save to Drafts** and press

Message is saved to Drafts folder.

- Note** → Recipient status (To/Cc/Bcc) or the order in which attachments appear may change when saving S! Mail messages.

Sending from Drafts

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

1 Select **Drafts** and press

Saved messages appear.

- To open properties, select a message → Press **Options** → Select **Message Details** → Press
 - Press to return.
- To delete draft messages, select one → Press **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

2 Select a message and press

Mail Composition window (see P.13-7) opens with some fields filled in.

3 Edit/send the message

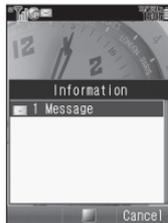
- For details, see procedures for creating SMS (see P.13-7) or S! Mail (see P.13-7 - 13-9).
- Sent messages are deleted from Drafts.
- To save edited message to Drafts again, press **Options** → Select **Save to Drafts** → Press → Select **Save as New** or **Save** (overwrite) → Press

Incoming Text Messages

Opening New Messages

1 Delivery Notice appears and Information window opens (✉ appears) for new mail

- If closed, open handset for new information to see Delivery Notice appear and Information window open.



2 Select Message and press

Received Msg. folder opens.

- Alternatively, press while Delivery Notice appears.
- When folders appear (see P.13-5 "Folder View"), select one → Press



3 Select a message and press

Message window opens.

- 3D animation plays for compatible messages (see P.13-24 "3D Pictogram"). To cancel 3D Pictogram, see P.13-25 "Display Effect".
- To retrieve complete S! Mail messages, see P.13-21.
- Using Messages: see P.13-23



- Tip** ▶
- When no Delivery Notice or Information window appears, open from Received Msg. folder (see P.13-23 "Checking Messages").
 - Handset does not respond to messages with Low Priority.

Retrieving Server Mail Box Messages Manually

- Press → Select **Retrieve New Msg.** → Press

Messages with Reply Request

- When closing a message containing Reply Request, **Sender request to reply. Reply this message?** appears.
 - To reply, choose **Yes** and press .
 - Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

Messages with Quiz

- A question appears when opening a message locked with Quiz. To open, press , enter the answer and press .
- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered.
- Subject and message text do not appear in message list.

Auto Play

- If **Set Auto Play File** is set to an attached file, a comment appears and the file opens/plays automatically upon opening the message.
 - Some files may not open/play.

Delivery Report

- When messages are sent with Delivery Report **On** (see P.13-35), handset receives a Delivery Report from Server Mail Box. To open Delivery Report, follow these steps in Information window (see P.13-19).

Select **Delivery Report** → Press → Select a message with unconfirmed Delivery Report →

Press → Press Report

- When Report list appears, press to open first report → Press → Select next report → Press
- Alternatively, open sent message;  appears for delivered messages,  for unknown and  for failed messages.

New Mail Out of Standby

- A double beep sounds and a notice such as **New Message from (Sender's name)** appears.

- To change/hide notice or mute double beep, see P.13-36 "Message Notice".

- Information window opens when handset returns to Standby.

When Handset Address is Changed

- New handset address confirmation from SoftBank arrives. To update My Details automatically, follow these steps.

Select the message → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

- My Details cannot be updated when three mail addresses are already saved.

Receiving Feeling Mail

Ringtone, Vibration and Small Light respond according to emotion set by sender and Information window opens.

- Ringtone, Small Light and Vibration settings in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
 - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
 - The message was filtered as spam
 - The message was sorted to a Secret folder



Customising Handset Response

Default Settings:

	Happy/ Glad	OK/ Good	Sad/ Sorry	NG/ Bad	Importance/ Notice
Idle Screen Info.	On				
Light On/Off	On				
Light Colour	Violet	White	Blue	Red	Yellow
Vibration Pattern	Link to Sound				
Ringtone On/Off	On				
Ringtone	Sound Effect 6	Sound Effect 7	Sound Effect 8	Sound Effect 9	Sound Effect 10
Duration	5 seconds				

Idle Screen Info.

Show or hide subject, sender and graphics above Information window for received Feeling Mail

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *Link to Feeling* ► *Idle Screen Info.*

Choose **On** (show) or **Off** ► Press

Light Colour

Set Small Light illumination or colour for incoming Feeling Mail

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *Link to Feeling* ► *Light Colour*

Activating/Deactivating

Select **Switch On/Off** ► Press ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press

Selecting Light Colour

Select **Light Colour** ► Press ► Select **Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad** or **Importance/Notice** ► Press ► Select a colour ► Press

Vibration Pattern

Set handset vibration for incoming Feeling Mail

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *Link to Feeling* ► *Vibration Pattern*

Select **On, Link to Sound** or **Off** ► Press

Ringtone

Set sound for incoming Feeling Mail; choose a tone as well as its duration

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *Link to Feeling* ► *Ringtone*

Activating/Deactivating

Select **Switch On/Off** ► Press ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press

Assign Tone

Select **Assign Tone** ► Press ► Select **Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad** or **Importance/Notice** ► Press ► Select **Preset Sounds, Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Video** or **Flash® Ringtone** ► Press ► Select a tone or file ► Press

Duration

Select **Duration** ► Press ► Enter time ► Press

Retrieving Complete S! Mail Messages

Centre sends initial portion of S! Mail message when:

- The message was sent to multiple recipients
- Files are attached to the message

☒ (S! Mail Notice) appears for S! Mail messages in Received Msg. folder when the remaining portion is in Server Mail Box.

Tip

- To retrieve complete S! Mail via Mail List, see **P.13-22**.
- To always retrieve complete S! Mail automatically, set Message DL (Japan) or Message DL (Abroad) to **Always Download** (see **P.13-38**). Message DL (Japan) is set to **DL only Tel. No.** by default; complete S! Mail is automatically received when sent from SoftBank handsets within Japan.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select Received Msg. and press

- When folders appear, select one ► Press

2 Select a message with **and press** **3 Press** **More**

Download starts.

- After download, complete message appears.
- To cancel download, press **Cancel**.

Note ► Messages up to 300 KB can be retrieved.**Retrieving Mail List**

Retrieve a list of messages stored in Server Mail Box (Server Mail).

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select Server Mail Box and press

- To open retrieved Mail List, select **Mail List** ► Press
- To retrieve all Server Mail, select **Retrieve All Mails** ► Press (Omit the next steps.)
- To delete all Server Mail, select **Delete All Mails** ► Press ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ► Select **Except New Msg.** or **Delete All** ► Press (Omit the next steps.)
 - It may take some time to delete all Server Mail.

2 Select Mail List and press **3 Press** **Options****4 Select Retrieve Mail List and press**

After retrieval, Mail List appears.

- When Mail List has already been retrieved, it is refreshed.
- To cancel retrieval, press **Cancel**.
- Using Mail List: see below

Server Status

- To check Server status, follow these steps after Step 1 on the left.

Select Mailbox Volume ► **Press**

- Press to return.
- To update Server Mail Volume, press .

Using Mail List

Retrieve	Retrieve complete S! Mail messages
----------	------------------------------------

Select a message ► **Press**

- To retrieve all Server Mail, press **Options** ► Select **Retrieve All** ► Press
- Retrieved messages are deleted from Mail List and saved to Received Msg. folder.
- To select multiple messages to retrieve, see **P.13-25**.

Remote Forward

Forward Server Mail directly to other SoftBank handsets, PCs, etc.

Select a message → Press [Options] → Select **Remote Forward** → Press [] → Select recipient field → Press [] → Enter recipients (perform Step 4 on P.13-8) → Press [Send]

Delete

Delete Server Mail

Select a message → Press [Options] → Select **Delete** → Press [] → Choose **Yes** → Press []

- To delete all Server Mail, press [Options] → Select **Delete All** → Press [] → Enter Handset Code → Press [] → Choose **Yes** → Press []

Message Details

Open Server Mail properties

Select a message → Press [Options] → Select **Message Details** → Press []

- Press [] to return.

Using Messages

Checking Messages

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

1 Select **Received Msg., Drafts, Sent Messages or Unsent Messages** and press []

Messages appear.

- While Information window appears, press [].
- When folders appear, select one → Press [].
- To open properties (not available for unsent messages), select a message → Press [Options] → Select **Message Details** → Press []
 - Press [] to scroll down.
 - Press [] to return.
- To open sender/recipient details, select a received or sent message → Press [Options] → Select **View Mail Address** → Press [] → Select sender or recipient → Press []
 - To return, press [Back] → Press [Back] → Press [Back]
 - Open sender/recipient details and press [Options] to copy number/address, save to Phone Book or set as an auto sort key (see P.13-32).

2 Select a message and press

- When an image is attached, press  to open it. Images may not appear if file size is too large.
 - When a question appears, press  and enter the correct answer to open the message.
 - Mail Composition window (see P.13-7) opens after opening messages in Drafts or Templates.
- Use  to scroll.
- To jump to the top or bottom of the message, press  **Options**
 ➔ Select **Scroll Jump** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Jump to Top**
 or **Jump to Bottom** ➔ Press 

Note ➤ Attached text file contents may not appear correctly.

Changing Encoding

- After Step 2 above, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Char-code**
 ➔ Press  ➔ Select an option ➔ Press 

Slide Playback

- A slide consists of message text with image/sound or video.
 After Step 2 above, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Slide Play** ➔ Press 
 - Press  to stop.

Editing Sent/Unsent Messages

- In Step 1 on P.13-23, select **Sent Messages** or **Unsent Messages** and press  then follow these steps.
 Select a message ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Edit & Send** or **Edit** ➔ Press  ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 5 on P.13-7 or on P.13-8

Copying Message Contents

- After Step 2 on the left, press  **Options** ➔ Select **Copy**
 ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Address, Subject or Message text**
 ➔ Press 
 - For **Message text** or **Subject**, use  to select the first character of text ➔ Press  ➔ Use  to select the end point ➔ Press 
 - To paste text into another window, see P.3-12 "Copy/Cut & Paste". My Pictograms, etc. copied from Arrange Mail Composition window (see P.13-12) may not be pasted.
 - Select a folder other than Drafts, Unsent Messages or Templates.

Saving SMS to USIM Card

- In Step 1 on P.13-23, select **Received Msg.** or **Sent Messages** and press  then follow these steps.
 Select an SMS message ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Advanced** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **SIM Sync** ➔ Press 
 - The number of savable messages varies by USIM Card.
 - **SIM Sync** appears only for compatible USIM Cards.

3D Pictogram

To animate Pictograms, Emoticons and compatible words such as **おはよう**, **食事** and **新幹線** included in the first 150 characters of message text, in 3D, follow these steps after Step 1 on P.13-23.

1 Select a message and press

2 Press **Options**

3 Select **3D Pictogram** and press

Press **Stop** to stop animation.

- Press to pause/resume.

■ 3D Pictogram Settings

Display Effect

Enable or disable 3D Pictogram upon opening received messages

Default Only Unread

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *3D Pictogram* ► *Display Effect*

Select **Always**, **Only Unread** or **Disable** ► Press

Background Colour/ Display Speed

Change background colour and animation speed

Default Background Colour: Random, Display Speed: Standard

Main Menu

► *Messaging* ► *Settings* ► *General Settings* ► *3D Pictogram*

Background Colour

Select **Background Colour** ► Press ► Select a colour or **Random** ► Press

Display Speed

Select **Display Speed** ► Press ► Select speed ► Press

■ Selecting Multiple Messages

Select multiple messages to protect, delete, change the status of or move all selected items simultaneously.

Main Menu

► *Messaging*

1 Select a folder and press

When folders appear within, select one ► Press

2 Select a message and press **Check**

appears.

To uncheck, select a message with ► Press **Uncheck**

3 Repeat **Step 2** as required

To uncheck all, press **Options** ► Select **Unselect All** ► Press

■ Switch to Read/Unread

Change received message status to read or unread.

Main Menu

► *Messaging*

1 Select **Received Msg.** and press

When folders appear, select one ► Press

2 **Switching Status of a Message**

1 Select a message and press **Options**

Switching Status of Selected Messages

1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 above) and press **Options**

- Skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select **Advanced** and press

4 Select **Switch To Unread** or **Switch to Read** and press

Replying to Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select **Received Msg.** and press 
 - When folders appear, select one ► Press 
- 2** Select a message and press 
 - To reply to sender only without quoting text, press  **Reply**
 - Skip ahead to Step 5
 - Mail Composition window opens.

3 Press  **Options**

4 Replying to SoftBank Handset

1 Select **Reply** or **Reply All** and press 

2 Select **S! Mail**, **S! Mail(History)**, **SMS** or **SMS(History)** and press 

- For **S! Mail** or **S! Mail(History)**, S! Mail Composition window opens.
- For **SMS** or **SMS(History)**, SMS Mail Composition window opens.

Replying to E-mail

1 Select **Reply** or **Reply All** and press 

2 Select **S! Mail** or **S! Mail(History)** and press 

S! Mail Composition window opens.

5 Complete and send message (perform from Step 5 on P.13-7 or on P.13-8)

- Tip** ►
- Select **Reply All** to send the same message to the sender and up to 19 recipients (To/Cc) of the original message at one time. **Reply All** may not appear for some messages.
 - For **Reply All**, your handset may be included in recipients.
 - Select **SMS(History)** or **S! Mail(History)** to quote the original message text when replying.

Forwarding Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select **Received Msg.** and press 
 - When folders appear, select one ► Press 
- 2** Select a message and press 
- 3** Press  **Options**
- 4** Select **Forward** and press 
 - For S! Mail messages, S! Mail Composition window opens.
 - To forward SMS messages, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** and press . Mail Composition window opens.
- 5** Select recipient field and press 

Select Recipient window opens.
- 6** Enter recipients and press 
 - To enter a recipient, perform Step 4 on P.13-8.

7 Press **Send**

- Files attached to the original message are automatically attached to forwarded messages.

Forwarding Forward NG Messages

■ **Sender prohibit to forward. Forward this message?** appears.

To forward, choose **Yes** ➔ Press 

Forwarding Server Mail

■ Follow these steps after Step 1 on P.13-26.

Select an S! Mail Notice  ➔ Press  **Options** ➔

Select **Forward** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Notifi.**

Forward or Remote Forward ➔ Press  ➔

Perform from Step 5 on P.13-26

- Some messages may not be forwardable.
- **Notifi. Forward** forwards S! Mail Notice only.

Cancelling Sent Messages

Send cancellation request to delete sent messages saved in recipient's received message folder. Subjects of cancellation requests are prefaced with **Del:**.

- Available for S! Mail messages sent to compatible SoftBank handsets.
- Sent messages may not be deleted if message text is short.
- Protected sent messages cannot be deleted.

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

1 Select **Sent Messages** and press

- When folders appear, select one ➔ Press 

2 Select a message and press **Options**

- When selected sent message is addressed to multiple recipients, cancellation request is sent to all the recipients.

3 Select **Set Sent Cancel** and press

4 Choose **Yes** and press

- Handset receives a Delivery Report.

Linked Info

Saving to Phone Book

Save a linked phone number/mail address from within message text or sender's/recipient's number/address to Phone Book. In message text, available numbers/addresses are selectable with .

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press

 When folders appear, select one ► Press 

2 Select a message and press

3 *Saving Sender's/Recipient's Address*

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select *Save Address* and press 

3 Select a phone number or mail address and press 

Saving Linked Info

1 Select a phone number or mail address and press 

2 Select *Save to Phone Book or Save Address* and press 

4 Select *As New Entry* and press

Number or address is entered in corresponding Phone Book field. Complete other fields and save (see **P.4-4**).

 To save to an existing Phone Book entry, open one ► Press  ► Press  **Save**

Using Linked Info

Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs (*http://*, *https://* or *rtsp://*) within message text to place calls, send messages or access Internet sites. Available numbers/addresses/URLs are selectable with .

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg., Sent Messages or Unsent Messages* and press

 When folders appear, select one ► Press 

2 Select a message and press

3 *Dialling Numbers*

1 Select number and press 

2 Select *Call or Video Call* and press 

Sending Messages

1 Select number or address and press 

2 Select *Create Message* and press 

 For phone numbers, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* ► Press  ► Complete and send message (Perform from Step 5 on **P.13-8**.)

 For mail addresses, complete and send *S! Mail* (perform from Step 5 on **P.13-8**).

Accessing the Internet

- 1 Select a URL and press
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Video/sound plays for *rtsp://*URLs (see P.14-12 "Streaming").

Protecting Messages

Protect important messages in Received Msg., Sent Messages or Templates folder from unintentional deletion. Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press

When folders appear, select one ► Press

- 2 **Protecting a Message**

- 1 Select a message and press Options

- To cancel protection, select a message with .

Protecting Selected Messages

- 1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.13-25) and press Options

- 3 Select **Lock** and press

appears for protected messages.

When folders appear, select **Unlock** ► Press

Deleting Messages

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Selecting Messages to Delete

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select **Received Msg., Drafts, Sent Messages or Unsent Messages** and press

When folders appear, select one ► Press

- 2 **Deleting a Message**

- 1 Select a message and press Options

Deleting Selected Messages

- 1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.13-25) and press Options

- 3 Select **Delete** and press

- 4 Choose **Yes** and press

Tip ► It may take some time to delete messages.

Deleting Delete NG Messages

- **Sender prohibit to delete. Delete this message?** appears. To delete, choose **Yes** ► Press
- Confirmation does not appear for Delete All.

Deleting Server Mail

■ Select **Received Msg.** in Step 1 on P.13-29 and follow these steps.

Select an S! Mail Notice (S!) → Press [Options] →
Select **Delete** → Press [] → Select **Notification,**
Remote Delete or Notifi. and Remote → Press [] →
Choose **Yes** → Press []

- Some messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select **Received Msg., Drafts, Sent Messages or Unsent Messages** and press []

■ When folders appear, select one → Press []

2 Press [Options]

- To delete messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages, skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select **Advanced** and press []

4 Select **Delete All** and press []

■ When folder contains protected messages, select **Delete All** or **Except locked msg.** → Press []

5 Enter Handset Code and press []

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save attached images, sounds, vFiles (Phone Book/schedule entries, etc.) and other files to Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press []

■ When folders appear, select one → Press []

2 Select a message and press []

3 Select a file and press [Options]

■ To open properties, select **File Details** → Press []

■ Press [] to return.

■ To switch display size, select **Picture Appearance** → Press []

→ Select **Normal** or **Fit for screen** → Press []

4 Select **Save to Data Folder** and press []

5 Enter name and press []

- To save without changing file name, press [] and proceed to Step 6.

6 Select **Save here..** and press []

Message window returns.

- When memory is full, a confirmation appears. Delete files (see P.8-8) and try again.

■ To save to Memory Card, press [Options] → Select **Change to Memory Card** → Press [] → Select **Save here..** → Press []

Using Attachments

Assign attached files as Wallpaper, ringtone or ringvideo directly from messages and save to Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press

When folders appear, select one ► Press 

2 Select a message and press

3 Select a file and press Options

4 *Wallpaper*

1 Select *Set as Wallpaper* and press

Ringtone

1 Select *Set as Ringtone* and press

Ringvideo

1 Select *Set as Ring Video* and press

5 Enter name and press

6 Select *Save here..* and press

Wallpaper, ringtone or ringvideo is set.

For images smaller or larger than Display, select *Centred*, *Full Screen* or *Fit Image* ► Press 

7 Press

My Folders

Organise received/sent messages into My Folders. Activate Folder View beforehand (see P.13-5).

Adding My Folders

Create up to 13 folders in addition to default Folder 1 - 7.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press

2 Press Options

3 Select *Create New Folder* and press

4 Enter name and press

- Enter up to 20 characters.

Renaming My Folders

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press

2 Select a folder (*My Folder*) and press Options

3 Select *Rename* and press 

 To select a Secret folder, see **P.13-33** "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret".

4 Enter name and press 

- Enter up to 20 characters.

Moving Messages

- Protected or incoming linked messages cannot be moved.
- To move files to a Secret folder, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press **2 Select a folder and press** 

 To select a Secret folder, see **P.13-33** "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret".

3 *Moving a Message***1 Select a message and press**  **Options*****Moving Multiple Messages*****1 Select messages (perform from Step 2 in "Selecting Multiple Messages" on P.13-25) and press**  **Options**

- Skip ahead to Step 5.

4 Select *Advanced* and press **5 Select *Move to Folder* and press** **6 Select a folder and press** **Setting Auto Sort Keys**

Set keys (sender/recipient, S! Mail subject or SMS message text string) by folder to sort received/sent messages automatically.

- Specify up to 20 keys for each folder including Spam Folder (see **P.13-35** "Anti Spam Measures").
- Keys in folders with smaller numbers have higher priority.
- Settings apply to newly received or sent messages.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press **2 Select a folder and press**  **Options**

 To select a Secret folder, see **P.13-33** "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret".

3 Select *My Folders* and press **4 Select a blank entry and press** 

 To delete entries, select one ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Delete* or *Clear All* ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 

5 Sort by Sender/Recipient

1 Select **Address** and press

2 Enter sender/recipient (perform Step 4 on P.13-8)

To change entries, select one → Press **Options** → Select **Replace** → Press → Perform Step 4 on P.13-8

Sort by Subject (S! Mail) or Text String (SMS)

1 Select **Subject** and press

2 Enter text and press

• Enter up to 40 single-byte alphanumeric.

Secret Folder

Hide folders to require Handset Code entry for access. Handset does not respond to messages sorted to Secret folders when Secret Folder (see P.13-37) in Message Notice is set to **Not Show**.

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

1 Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press

2 Select a folder (My Folder) and press **Options**

3 Select **Set Secret** and press

4 Enter Handset Code and press

Unlock Temporarily

For temporary access to Secret folders, set folders to appear and follow these steps.

After Step 1 on the left, press **Options** → Select **Unlock Temporarily** → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

• Secret folders are hidden next time Received Msg. or Sent Messages folder is opened.

Cancel Secret

Unlock Secret folders temporarily and follow these steps.

Select a **Secret folder** → Press **Options** → Select **Unset Secret** → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

Deleting Folders

Empty folder (move or delete messages) beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

1 Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press

2 Select a folder (My Folder) and press **Options**

3 Select **Delete** and press

Confirmation appears when auto sort keys are set to the folder. Choose **Yes** → Press

4 Enter Handset Code and press

Additional Functions

Speed Mail List

Save up to ten frequently used numbers/addresses here to use Speed Mail (see right). When creating messages, reference recipient addresses from Speed Mail List (see P.13-8).

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Speed Mail List

1 Select <empty> and press

-  To change entries, select one ► Press  ► Edit number/address ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 
-  To delete entries, select one ► Press  **Options** ► Select **Delete** or **Clear All** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 

2 Phone Book

1 Select **Phone Book** and press

2 Select an entry and press

-  To search Phone Book, perform Steps 2 - 3 in "Dialling from Phone Book" on P.4-8.

Direct Entry

1 Select **Enter Number** or **Enter Address** and press

2 Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number or mail address and press

Adding to Speed Mail List while Creating Message

-  Follow these steps after Step 3 on P.13-7 or on P.13-8.
Select **Speed Mail List** ► Press  ► Select **<empty>** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press  ► Perform Step 2 on the left

Speed Mail

Create mail from Standby using numbers/addresses saved to Speed Mail List (see left).

1 In Standby, press Speed Mail List entry number with Keypad (- and

2 Press **Mail**

-  When messaging SoftBank handsets, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** ► Press 

3 Complete and send message (perform from Step 5 on P.13-7 or on P.13-8)

Auto Resend

Activate Auto Resend to send unsent messages (failed due to out-of-range, etc.) automatically when signal returns.

- Resend is attempted up to two times for each message.
- Messages are sent in the same order they were created.
- Information window opens for successful delivery.
- Auto Resend is **On** by default.

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► General Settings ►
Auto Resend

1 Choose **On** and press

- To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press
 - Remaining failed messages will not be sent automatically.

Note ► Auto Resend is available while roaming, however, message delivery may incur higher charges.

General Settings

Sending Progress Show or hide animation when sending mail

Default>Show

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► General Settings ►
Sending Progress

Select **Show** or **Do not show** ► Press

Delivery Report

Confirm SMS/S! Mail delivery (see P.13-20)

- Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.
DefaultOff

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► General Settings ►
Delivery Report

Choose **On (request)** or **Off** ► Press

- If **On**, reports arrive for all messages to SoftBank handsets.

Anti Spam Measures Filter incoming messages from numbers or addresses not saved in Phone Book

DefaultOff

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► General Settings ►
Anti Spam Measures

Enter Handset Code ► Press ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press

- When Anti Spam Measures is active, unsolicited messages (spam) are filtered into **Spam Folder**.
- Auto sort keys (see P.13-32) are available for Spam Folder.
- Keys in folders other than Spam Folder have higher priority.
- Handset does not respond to filtered messages. (No ringtones, Information window, etc.)

Signature Settings

Save a name, etc. to insert into message text

Default: Auto Insert: Off

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → General Settings →
Signature Settings

Edit

Select **Edit** → Press → Enter/edit signature →
Press

- Enter up to 256 single-byte alphanumerics.

Auto Insert

Select **Auto Insert** → Press → Choose **On or Off**
→ Press

- When signature is not saved, enter signature → Press
- Activate Auto Insert to enter signature into message text automatically.
- Available only for S! Mail.

Auto Delete

Activate or cancel automatic deletion of oldest received/sent messages to save new ones

Default: Received Msg.: Off, Sent Messages: On

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → General Settings →
Auto Delete

Received Messages

Select **Received Msg.** → Press → Choose **On or Off**
→ Press

Sent Messages

Select **Sent Messages** → Press → Choose **On or Off**
→ Press

Message Notice

Change/hide notice or activate/mute alert sound (double beep) for messages received during handset use

Default: View Setting: Name, Alert Sound: On

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → General Settings →
Message Notice

View Setting

Select **View Setting** → Press → Select **Name,**
Address, Name & Subject or **Off** → Press

Alert Sound

Select **Alert Sound** → Press → Choose **On or Off**
→ Press

Secret Folder

Select whether to notify (with ringtones, etc.) of incoming messages sorted to Secret folders

Default>Show

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → General Settings →
Message Notice → Secret Folder

Select **Show (notify) or Not Show** → Press

Scroll Unit

Select from three scroll units

Default>Single Line

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → General Settings →
Scroll Unit

Select **Single Line, Half Page or Whole Page** → Press

SMS Settings

Expiry Time

Set a time limit to store sent messages in Server Mail Box

Default>Maximum

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → SMS Settings → Expiry
Time

Select **Maximum, 30 minutes, 1 hour, 6 hours, 1 day or 1 week** → Press

- Expiry Time applies to SMS Centre Number set to **Setting1 (Default)** in Message Centre (see right).

Message Centre

Set SMS Centre Number

Default>Setting1 (+819066519300)

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → SMS Settings →
Message Centre

Adding Centre Number

Select **Setting2 or Setting3** → Press → Enter SMS
Centre Number → Press

Editing Centre Number

Select **Setting1 (Default), Setting2 or Setting3** →
Press → Edit SMS Centre Number → Press

Deleting Centre Number

Select **Setting2 or Setting3** → Press **Options** →
Select **Delete** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Setting Centre Number

Select **Setting2 or Setting3** → Press **Options** →
Select **Set Default** → Press

- Selected number moves to **Setting1 (Default)** and shifts the others down.

Note ► Do not change Centre Number unless instructed to do so.

Char-code

Select character encoding for composing SMS messages

Default>Shift JIS

Main Menu

Messaging → Settings → SMS Settings →
Char-code

Select **Shift JIS (70 double or single-byte characters) or GSM 7bit (160 single-byte alphanumeric)** → Press

S! Mail Settings

Message DL (Japan)

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual

■ Adjust this setting when using handset in Japan.

Default DL only Tel. No.

Main Menu

▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *S! Mail Settings* ▶
Message DL(Japan)

Select **Always Download, DL only Tel. No. or Always Defer** ▶ Press

Message DL (Abroad)

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual

■ Adjust this setting when using handset outside Japan.

Default Always Defer

Main Menu

▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *S! Mail Settings* ▶
Message DL(Abroad)

Select **Always Download or Always Defer** ▶ Press

Reply To Settings

Designate a different mail address for receiving replies

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *S! Mail Settings* ▶
Reply To Settings

Activating/Deactivating

Select **Switch On/Off** ▶ Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press

Set Address

Select **Edit Address** ▶ Press ▶ Select or enter address ▶ Press

Picture Appearance

Set display size for images in received messages

Default Normal

Main Menu

▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *S! Mail Settings* ▶
Picture Appearance

Select **Normal or Fit for screen** ▶ Press

- Slides (see P.13-24) always play at Normal size.

Auto Play File

Select whether to open/play attached images/sounds automatically

Default Pictures: On, Sounds: Off

Main Menu

▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *S! Mail Settings* ▶ *Auto Play File*

Images

Select **Pictures** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On (open) or Off** ▶ Press

Sounds

Select **Sounds** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On (play) or Off** ▶ Press

- Images/sounds always open/play when playing slides (see P.13-24).
- Auto Play File settings do not apply to Arrange Mail.

Send File Settings

Select whether to save newly captured images to Data Folder before attaching them to messages

Default Send & Save

Main Menu

▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *S! Mail Settings* ▶
Send File Settings

Select **Send & Save or Send&Not Save** ▶ Press

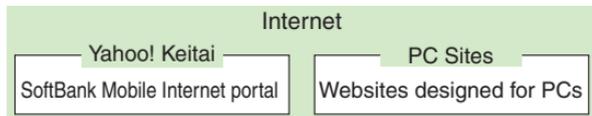
Yahoo! Keitai

Getting Started

Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites.

In this manual, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal, "PC sites" to websites viewed via PC Site Browser, and "Internet" to both Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites.

Retrieve Network Information (see P.1-20) before using the Internet.



■ Yahoo! Keitai Features

- Using Yahoo! Keitai: see P.14-3
- Saving Files to Data Folder: see P.14-11
- Streaming: see P.14-12
- Live Monitor: see P.14-14

■ PC Site Feature

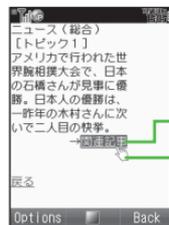
Using PC Site Browser: see P.14-17

Note ▶ Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection (📶 appears) and thus transmission fees apply. To disconnect, press .

- Tip** ▶
- An additional contract is required to use the Internet.
 - Address questions about Yahoo! Keitai to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see P.19-28).

Internet Content

Sample Internet page:



Cursor (see P.14-6)

Pointer (see P.14-5)

Scroll Bar (see P.14-6)

Note ▶ Requested pages may not appear due to transmission conditions/Server status.

Tip ▶ To activate PC Site Browser while browsing Yahoo! Keitai, see Step 1 on P.14-3.

Cache Memory

- Cache Memory temporarily holds copies of retrieved pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.
 - Previously viewed pages may load from Cache Memory.
 - Cached items with expiry dates are deleted upon expiry.

■ SSL

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an encryption protocol for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers. Electronic certificates are saved on handset (see **P.14-22** "Root Certificates").

Disclaimer

- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Baltimore Technologies Japan, Entrust Japan, GeoTrust Japan, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Using Yahoo! Keitai

Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu

Select topics from Yahoo! Keitai Menu to access sites. Yahoo! Keitai Menu is subject to change.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select **Yahoo! Keitai** and press

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.

- Shortcut: In Standby, press 

 To activate PC Site Browser, press  **Options** → Select **Change to PC Browser** → Press 

- A message appears. To proceed, press  twice. Last opened PC site appears.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.

2 Highlight a menu item

3 Press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if it is closed.
-  To disconnect, press .

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to open additional links

 Basic Operations: see **P.14-5**

 To return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu, press  **Options** → Select **Yahoo! Keitai** → Press 

5 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Using History

Open previously viewed Yahoo! Keitai pages. History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

Main Menu ► *Yahoo! Keitai* ► *History*

1 Select an item and press

2 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Opening Properties

- Open History and follow these steps.
 - Select an item ► Press **Options** ► Select **Details** ► Press
 - Press to exit.

Sending URLs via S! Mail/SMS

- Open History and follow these steps.
 - Select an item ► Press **Options** ► Select **Send URL** ► Press ► Select **S! Mail or SMS** ► Press ► Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.13-8 or on P.13-7.)

Sorting Items

- Open History and follow these steps.
 - Press **Options** ► Select **Sort** ► Press ► Select **By Domain or By Date** ► Press

Deleting History

- Open History and follow these steps.
 - Select an item ► Press **Options** ► Select **Delete** ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press
 - To delete all, press **Options** ► Select **Delete All** ► Press ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

Entering URLs Directly

Enter URLs directly to access Yahoo! Keitai sites.

- To use History, see left.
- *http://* may be omitted.

Main Menu ► *Yahoo! Keitai* ► *Enter URL*

1 Enter URL and press

- PC Site Browser may activate depending on the URL.

2 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Selecting from Previously Entered URLs

- Open URL entry window and follow these steps.
 - Press **Options** ► Select **Enter URL Logs** ► Press ► Select a URL ► Press
 - Up to 10 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

Basic Operations

Back Return to the previous page

Press **Ⓜ** **Back**.

To return to the initial page, press **☰** **Options** → Select **Forward** → Press **■**

Jump to Top/Bottom Jump to page top or bottom

Press **☰** **Options** → Select **Convenient Function** → Press **■** → Select **Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom** → Press **■**

Secure Area Open secure page

When **Entering secure area** appears, press **■**.

- **🔒** appears for secure connections.
- To disable confirmations, see P.14-21 "Secure Prompt".

Authentication Access pages requiring user authentication

If requested, enter user ID or password → Press **■** → Press **Ⓜ** **Send**

Help View a summary of key assignments

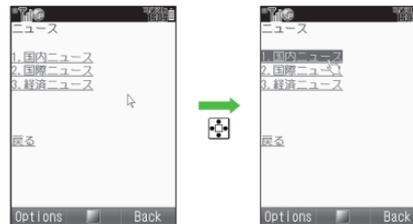
Press **☰** **Options** → Select **Help** → Press **■**
Press **■** to return.

Pointer Navigation

Use pointer (↔) to scroll pages or select items. Control pointer with Multi Selector.

When page content continues beyond view, move pointer to the edge to scroll in that direction.

Selecting Items



Activating/Cancelling Pointer Navigation

Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **☰** **Options** → Select **Settings** → Press **■** → Select **Cursor Settings** → Press **■** → Select **Cursor/Yahoo! Keitai or Cursor/PC Site Browser** → Press **■** → Choose **On or Off** → Press **■**

- Alternatively, press **☰** for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel pointer navigation.

Changing Pointer Speed

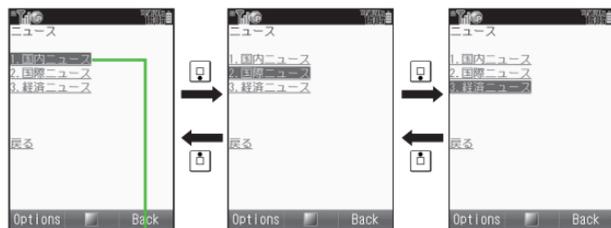
Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **☰** **Options** → Select **Settings** → Press **■** → Select **Cursor Settings** → Press **■** → Select **Speed Settings** → Press **■** → Select **Slow, Normal or Fast** → Press **■**

Using Cursor

When pointer navigation is cancelled, use cursor to select menu items.

Use  to scroll through items.



Cursor

Use  to move left and right when multiple items are listed in one row. Cursor does not appear for unselectable items.

Tip ▶ Press and hold the following keys to scroll by page.

 (Up),  (Left),  (Right),  (Down)

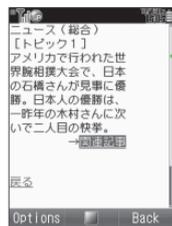
Scrolling Pages

Non-Framed Pages

Scroll bar appears on the right or bottom when page content continues beyond view. Slider indicates current page position.

Use  to scroll; slider moves accordingly.

Scroll Bar

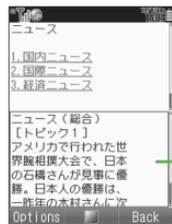


Framed Pages

Press  to select other frames. Use

 to scroll.

Selected Frame



Viewing Single Frame

■ Open a framed page and follow these steps.

Press to select a frame → Press Options →

Select **Frame In** → Press

■ To return, press Options → Select **Frame Out** → Press

■ Alternatively, press to return.

Tabbed Browsing

Open up to three pages at one time using tabs. Yahoo! Keitai and PC site pages cannot be open simultaneously.



1 Press Options

2 Select **Open by New Tab** and press

Highlighted link opens in a new tab.

• From Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL and History, the selected/specified page opens in a new tab.

■ To open a third page, press Options → Select **Tab Menu** → Press → Select **Open by New Tab** → Press

■ To switch between tabs, press Options → Select **Tab Menu** → Press → Select **Switch Tab** → Press → Select a tab → Press

■ Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds then select a tab.

■ To close the active tab, press Options → Select **Tab Menu** → Press → Select **Close Tab** → Press

■ To close all but the active tab, press Options → Select **Tab Menu** → Press → Select **Close All Other Tabs** → Press

Note ▶ Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close old tabs.

Tip ▶ Some pages automatically open in a new tab.

Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.



Text Entry Field

- Highlight and press . Text entry window opens. Enter text and press .

Check-box

- Highlight (check-box) and press . The box changes to , indicating that the item is selected.
- In addition to , may also appear as selection indicators.

Menu List

- Highlight the field and press to select an item. Some menu lists support multiple selection; select items and press to exit list.

Command Button

- Use to send, reset, etc.
- Highlight and press to execute the indicated command.

Input Memory

- Entered text (except Security Code) is saved to Input Memory. Use saved text in other applications.
- Up to 20 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

Using Input Memory

- In a text entry window, press Options Select **Advanced** Press Select **Input Memory** Press Select text Press

Advanced Features

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmark sites or save page content to Saved Pages.

Item	Description
Bookmarks	Save links to sites. Handset connects to the Internet to access the site. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Create folders to organise Bookmarks.• Save up to 100 Bookmarks between Yahoo! Keitai and Streaming Bookmarks, and up to 100 for PC sites.
Saved Pages	Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Save frequently used items to Saved Pages.• Save up to 100 Bookmarks for Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites each.

Space Town

- **Sharp Space Town** is bookmarked by default. Space Town (Japanese Only) is dedicated to SoftBank handsets manufactured by SHARP. Visit Space Town to download Wallpaper, games, Dictionary files, etc.

Saving Bookmarks & Pages

Follow these steps after opening a page (after Step 4 on P.14-3 or on P.14-18.)

1 Press  **Options**

- **Bookmark** or **Saved Pages** appears only for savable pages.

2 **Bookmarks**

1 Select **Bookmark** and press 

2 Select **Save** and press 

3 Enter title and press 

- Bookmarks saved while streaming are saved to Streaming Bookmarks.

Saved Pages

1 Select **Saved Pages** and press 

2 Select **Save** and press 

3 Enter title and press 

Saving URLs to Bookmarks

- Enter URLs directly to save site references to Bookmarks.
Press  **➔ Select Yahoo! Keitai** **➔ Press**  **➔ Select Bookmarks** **➔ Press**  **➔ Select**  (Yahoo! Keitai),  (PC Site Browser) or  (Streaming) **➔ Press**  **Options** **➔ Select Add New Bookmark** **➔ Press**  **➔ Enter URL** **➔ Press**  **➔ Enter title** **➔ Press** 

Opening Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

1 Bookmarks

1 Select Bookmarks and press

- To send URLs via S! Mail/SMS, select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Send** → Press → Select **As Message** → Press → Select **S! Mail** or **SMS** → Press → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.13-7 or on P.13-8.)

- To open properties, select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Details** → Press → Press to exit.

2 Use to select (Yahoo! Keitai), (PC Site Browser) or (Streaming)

Saved Pages

1 Select Saved Pages and press

- To open properties, select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Details** → Press → Press to exit.

2 Use to select (Yahoo! Keitai) or (PC Site Browser)

2 Select a title and press



Bookmarks



Saved Page

Opening Bookmarks Online

- Press **Options** → Select **Bookmark** → Press → Select **List View** → Press → Select a title → Press

Editing Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Open Bookmarks or Saved Pages first (perform Step 1 on the left).

Bookmarks

Edit Edit titles or URLs

Titles

- Select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Edit** → Press → Select **Title:** → Press → Enter title → Press → Press **Save**

URLs

- Select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Edit** → Press → Select **URL:** → Press → Enter URL → Press → Press **Save**

Bookmarks Folder Sort Bookmarks into folders

Creating a Folder

- Press **Options** → Select **Create Folder** → Press → Enter name → Press

Moving to Folder

- Select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Move** → Press → Press **Folder** → Select a folder → Press → Press

- To move back from folders, select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Move** → Press → Press **Parent** → Press

Changing Folder Names

Select a folder → Press [Options] → Select *Rename*
→ Press [Enter] → Enter name → Press [Enter]

■ Saved Pages

Rename Change titles

Select a title → Press [Options] → Select *Rename* →
Press [Enter] → Enter title → Press [Enter]

■ Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Move Change the order of entries

Select a title → Press [Options] → Select *Move* →
Press [Enter] → Use [Down] to select target location →
Press [Enter]

Delete Delete entries

Select a title or folder → Press [Options] → Select
Delete → Press [Enter] → Choose *Yes* → Press [Enter]
■ To delete all titles/folders, press [Options] → Select *Delete*
All → Press [Enter] → Enter Handset Code → Press [Enter] →
Choose *Yes* → Press [Enter]

Saving Files to Data Folder

Save images, sounds, etc. on Yahoo! Keitai to Data Folder.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Open a page

1 Press [Options]

2 Select *Save Items* and press [Enter]

- If no other files are contained on the page, skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select a file and press [Enter]

4 Select *Save* and press [Enter]

Data Folder opens.

■ To open files, select *View* or *Play* → Press [Enter]

- Press [Back] to return.

■ To open properties, select *Details* → Press [Enter]

- Press [Enter] to exit.

■ To switch between handset and Memory Card, press [Options]

→ Select *Change to Phone* or *Change to Memory Card* → Press [Enter]

■ To save to a sub folder, select folder → Press [Enter]

5 Press [Enter]

File is saved to Data Folder.

- Handle File(s) menu may open with available file functions.
- When memory is full, notification appears. Delete files and try again (see P.8-8).
- If the same file name exists, select *Rename*, *Overwrite* or *Cancel* → Press [Enter]

Clicking on File Links

- Some files are saved automatically. Save location is indicated after download.

Incoming Calls/Mail while Streaming

- Streaming stops for incoming calls. Press **[M]** to answer calls.
To reject calls, press [M] Options ➔ Select Reject ➔ Press [M]
 - After the call, **Reconnect?** appears.
- Notice appears or a double beep sounds for incoming mail (see P.13-36 "Message Notice").

- Note** ➤
- Streaming continues even after handset is closed.
 - After three minutes on pause, **Reconnect?** appears.
 - Live streaming does not support pause, fast forward, rewind or Options.

- Tip** ➤ Up to 10 previously accessed URLs are saved. When full, oldest URLs are deleted to make room for new ones.

Changing Display Size

- Press **[2.F]** to toggle Display Size for current stream.
 - Display Size toggles as follows: **Full Screen** (no indicators) → **Full Screen** (with indicators) → **Normal** → **Enlarge**
 - Display Size cannot be changed while stream is paused; press **[2.F]** to show or hide indicators.
- Display Size may not change depending on file/stream.
- Change Display Size setting for streaming while streaming.
Press [M] Options ➔ Select Settings ➔ Press [M] ➔ Select Display Size ➔ Press [M] ➔ Select Normal, Enlarge or Full Screen ➔ Press [M]

Backlight

- Adjust streaming Backlight while streaming.
Press [M] Options ➔ Select Settings ➔ Press [M] ➔ Select Backlight ➔ Press [M] ➔ Select Always On, Always Off or Normal Settings ➔ Press [M]
- Selecting **Normal Settings** applies Display Backlight setting (see P.9-9).

Sound Settings

- Adjust streaming Sound Settings while streaming.
Press [M] Options ➔ Select Settings ➔ Press [M] ➔ Select Sound Settings ➔ Press [M] ➔ Select Normal, Bass, Surround or Surround Bass ➔ Press [M]

Time Search

Specify start point while streaming.

Press **Options** → **Select Time Search** → Press **Enter time** → Press

Streaming from Media Player

Access the Internet from Media Player

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* → *Streaming*

Resuming the File Played Last

Select **Last Played** → Press

- File plays from where it stopped.

Entering URLs

Select **Enter URL** → Press → Enter URL → Press

- Enter up to 1,024 characters.

Using Bookmarks

Select **Bookmarks** → Press → Select an entry → Press

Using History

Select **History** → Press → Select an entry → Press

- To open properties, select **History** → Press → Select an entry → Press **Options** → Select **Detail** → Press to exit.
- To edit and access URLs, select **History** → Press → Select an entry → Press **Options** → Select **Edit URL** → Press → Edit URL → Press

Tip ▶ Select **Settings** in Streaming menu and press to set Backlight, Display Size and Sound Settings.

Live Monitor (Japanese Only)

Live Monitor Basics

Register with compatible Yahoo! Keitai content to receive update notices on handset.

- Live Monitor consists of Live Monitor List and S! Loop List.
- In Standby, view breaking news in Live Monitor List (see P.9-5).

Opening Live Monitor List & S! Loop List

Main Menu ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Live Monitor*

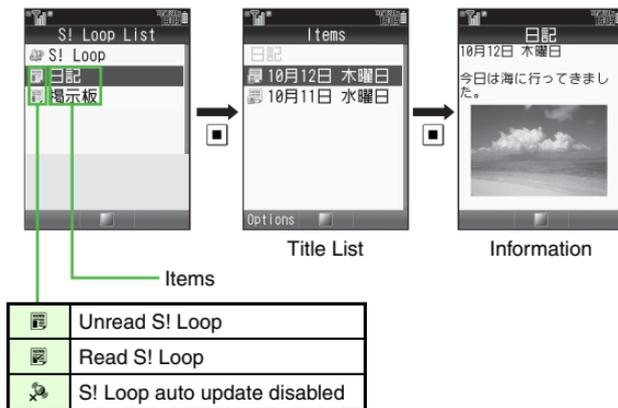
1 Select **Live Monitor List** or **S! Loop List** and press

Live Monitor List



	Unread News Flash		Unread General news
	Read News Flash		Read General news
	News Flash auto update disabled		General news auto update disabled

S! Loop List



Opening Information

Live Monitor List

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

- 1 Select Live Monitor List and press**
- 2 Select an item and press**
Title list appears (see P.14-14).
- 3 Select a title and press**
Information appears (see P.14-14).
 - To access the Internet, select the title in information ▶
Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press
 - Handset connects to the Internet.

S! Loop List

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

- 1 Select S! Loop List and press**
- 2 Select an item and press**
Title list appears (see left).
- 3 Select a title and press**
Information appears (see left).
 - To access the Internet, select the title in information ▶
Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press
 - Handset connects to the Internet.

Registering with Live Monitor Items

Live Monitor List

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

- 1 Select Live Monitor List and press**
 - 2 Select Contents List and press**
Handset connects to the Internet.
 - 3 Select an item and press**
 - Follow onscreen instructions.
- Tip** ▶ Register with up to one News Flash item and four General news items.

S! Loop List

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► Live Monitor

- 1 Select **S! Loop List** and press
- 2 Select **S! Loop** and press
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Tip ► Register with up to five S! Loop items.

Updating Live Monitor Items

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► Live Monitor

- 1 Select **Live Monitor List** or **S! Loop List** and press

2 Updating Single Items

- 1 Select an item and press **Options**
- 2 Select **Reload** and press
- 3 Select **Reload This Monitor** and press

Updating All Items

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Reload** and press
- 3 Select **Reload All** and press

Opening Properties

- Open Live Monitor List or S! Loop List and follow these steps.
Select an item ► **Press** **Options** ► **Select Details**
 ► **Press**

Automatic Update

- Update Live Monitor items automatically after a set interval (from Automatic Update activation). Open properties (see above) to see next Automatic Update time.
- Automatic Update is not available for Live Monitor List News Flash/S! Loop List items between 10:00 PM and 5:59 AM.
- Automatic Update is only available in Japan.
- Update may fail if signal is weak/handset is out-of-range.
- To update manually, see left.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.
- Automatic Update is **Off** by default.

Live Monitor List

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► Live Monitor ► Settings ►
Automatic Update ► Live Monitor

1 News Flash

- 1 Select **News Flash** and press
- 2 Press
- 3 Select **1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours or 8 hours** and press

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press

General News

- 1 Select **General** and press
- 2 Press
- 3 Choose **On** and press

- General news items are updated every 24 hours.
- To cancel, choose **Off** → Press

S! Loop List

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor ▶ Settings ▶ Automatic Update ▶ S! Loop

- 1 Press
- 2 Choose **On** and press
 - S! Loop List items are updated every four hours.
 - To cancel, choose **Off** → Press

Deleting Live Monitor Items

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

- 1 Select **Live Monitor List** or **S! Loop List** and press
- 2 **Deleting Single Items**
 - 1 Select an item and press **Options**
 - 2 Select **Delete** and press
 - 3 Select **Delete This Monitor** and press
 - 4 Choose **Yes** and press

Deleting All Items

- 1 Press **Options**

- 2 Select **Delete** and press
- 3 Select **Delete All** and press
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press
- 5 Choose **Yes** and press

Note ▶ Items are not deleted during auto updates.

Using PC Site Browser

Activate PC Site Browser to view websites designed for PCs; only document files are downloadable and browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.

Opening Yahoo! JAPAN

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ PC Site Browser

- 1 Select **Homepage** and press

- A message appears. To proceed, press twice. Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- appears.

■ To open Yahoo! Keitai, press **Options** → Select **Switch Browser** → Press

- A message appears. To proceed, press twice. Last opened Yahoo! Keitai site appears.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.



2 Highlight a menu item**3 Press**

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if it is closed.

To disconnect, press .

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 to open additional links

Basic Operations: see **P.14-5**

Saving Bookmarks & Pages: see **P.14-9**

Using Linked Info: see **P.14-12**

To return to Yahoo! JAPAN Home, press **Options** Select **Homepage** Press

5 To exit, press **then choose Yes and press** **Switching View**

- Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **Options** **Select PC Screen** **Press**

- To switch from PC Screen view to Small Screen view, press **Options** Select **Small Screen** Press

- In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
- In PC Screen view, PC sites appear in W 800 x H 600 dots.

Zoom In/Out

- Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **Options** **Select Convenient Function**

Press **Select Zoom In/Out** **Press**

Select a scale **Press**

Using History

Open previously viewed pages. History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

Main Menu *Yahoo! Keitai* *PC Site Browser* *History*

1 Select an item and press

- To open properties, send URL, sort items or delete, see **P.14-4**.

2 To exit, press **then choose Yes and press** **Entering URLs Directly**

Enter URLs directly to access sites.

- To use History, see above.
- **http://** may be omitted.

Main Menu *Yahoo! Keitai* *PC Site Browser* *Enter URL*

1 Enter URL and press

- Yahoo! Keitai page may open depending on the URL.
- Selecting from Previously Entered URLs: see **P.14-4**

2 To exit, press **then choose Yes and press**

Additional Functions

Sub Menu Settings

Access Options menu settings from an open page.

Copy Text

Copy text

Press  **Options** → **Select Copy Text** → Press  → **Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.3-13**

Reload

Update page content

Press  **Options** → **Select Reload** → Press 

- Reload simultaneously updates the corresponding content saved in Saved Pages.

Enter URL

Enter URL directly to access Internet sites

Press  **Options** → **Select Enter URL** → Press  → **Perform from Step 1 in "Entering URLs Directly" on P.14-4**

Search

Search current page

Press  **Options** → **Select Convenient Function** → Press  → **Select Search** → Press  → **Enter text to search** → Press 

- First search result is highlighted; press  to jump to next.
 To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

Send

Send URLs via S! Mail/SMS

Press  **Options** → **Select Convenient Function** → Press  → **Select Send URL** → Press  → **Select S! Mail or SMS** → Press  → **Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.13-8 or on P.13-7.)**

Details

Open page properties

Press  **Options** → **Select Convenient Function** → Press  → **Select Details** → Press  → **Select Page Information or Server Certificate** → Press 
 Press  to return.

History

Previously visited Internet site links

Press  **Options** → **Select History** → Press  → **Perform from Step 1 in "Using History" on P.14-4**

Char-code

Change encoding when text appears distorted

Press  **Options** → **Select Settings** → Press  → **Select Char-code** → Press  → **Select an option** → Press 

- Use Automatic whenever possible.

Uploading Files

Upload images or other Data Folder files to the Centre via Internet sites

 Open compatible site first.
Select Browse... → Press  → **Select a file** → Press  → **Select Send** → Press 

- Example above is for reference only. Follow site instructions for specific procedure.
- Files are uploadable only via pages supporting uploads.

Common Settings

Font Size

Change character size

Default: Standard

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Font Size

Select a size ▶ Press

Scroll Unit

Select from three scroll units

Default: Single Line

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Scroll Unit

Select a unit ▶ Press

Downloads

Select whether to download images and sounds on Internet sites automatically or to open text information only

Default: Show images/Play sounds

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Downloads

Images

Select **Images** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Show images or Do not show** ▶ Press

Sounds

Select **Sounds** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Play sounds or Do not play** ▶ Press

Memory Operation

Clear cache, cookies or authentication information

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Memory Operation

Select **Delete Cache, Delete Cookie or Delete Authentic Info** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

- Deleted Items:

Cache	Temporarily saved information in Cache Memory
Cookie	Information sent by a server for user identification
Authentic Info	User ID or password previously entered for authentication

Download to

Select whether to save downloaded files on handset or Memory Card

Default: Phone Preferred

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Download to

Select **Phone Preferred or Prefer Card** ▶ Press

- If selected memory is low, downloaded files are not saved.
- Saving to Memory Card is prohibited depending on the file; such files are saved to handset.

Browser Initializes

Restore default settings and reset Bookmarks and Saved Pages

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Browser Initializes

Enter **Handset Code** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Reset Settings

Restore default settings

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Reset

Enter **Handset Code** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

PC Site Browser Settings

Warning Message

Show or hide warning message when activating PC Site Browser or when switching to Yahoo! Keitai

Default On

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ PC Site Browser ▶ PC Site Browser Settings ▶ Warning Message

Select **PC Site Browser** or **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ Press
▶ Choose **On (show)** or **Off** ▶ Press

Zoom In/Out Settings

Select page scale

Default 100%

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ PC Site Browser ▶ PC Site Browser Settings ▶ Zoom In/Out Settings

Select a **scale** ▶ Press

Security

Security Settings affect both Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser.

Manufacture Number

Select whether or not to send handset manufacture number automatically for authentication

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Security Settings ▶ Manufacture Number

Choose **On (send)** or **Off** ▶ Press

Send Referer

Select whether or not to send referer information to the Server

Default Send

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Security Settings ▶ Send Referer

Select **Send or Not Send** ▶ Press

Cookies

Enable or disable cookies (see P.14-20)

Default Enabled

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Security Settings ▶ Cookies

Select **Enabled, Disabled** or **Confirm** ▶ Press

Script Settings

Select whether or not to run scripts

Default Confirm

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Security Settings ▶ Script Settings

Select **On, Ask NW Access, Confirm** or **Off** ▶ Press

Secure Prompt

Show or hide confirmations before entering and exiting secure pages (see P.14-3)

Default Show

Main Menu

▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Security Settings ▶ Secure Prompt

Select **Show** or **Do not show** ▶ Press

**Root
Certificates**Open electronic certificates issued by
Certificate Authorities saved on handset**Main Menu**▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *Common Settings* ▶ *Security
Settings***Select *Root Certificates* (preloaded certificates) ▶****Press** To open certificates, select one ▶ Press Press to exit.**Authentic Info
Keep**Previously entered user ID or password is
entered automatically for authentication**Default** Per browsing**Main Menu**▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *Common Settings* ▶ *Security
Settings* ▶ *Authentic Info Keep***Select *Per browsing, On* (authenticate automatically)
or *Off* ▶ Press**

- For ***Per browsing***, entered user ID or password remains for automatic authentication and is deleted upon exiting the Internet.
- For ***On***, entered user ID or password remains even after exiting the Internet or turning handset power off.

Tip ▶

Saved user ID or password is applicable to Basic/Digest authentication. Some sites may employ other HTTP authentication schemes.

**Flash®
Restriction**Select whether or not to restrict Flash®
downloads**Default** On**Main Menu**▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *Common Settings* ▶ *Security
Settings* ▶ *Flash® Restriction***Choose *On* (restrict) or *Off* ▶ Press**

S! Applications

Getting Started

Download S! Applications, including games.

Download and use 810SH/811SH compatible S! Applications.

- Tip** ▶
- Separate subscriptions are required for S! Applications downloaded via Yahoo! Keitai.
 - Address questions about S! Applications to SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).
 - Some preloaded S! Applications can be deleted (see **P.15-6**). To restore them, perform Memory All Clear (see **P.15-10**).

Lifestyle-Appli

- Lifestyle-Appli, an S! Application required to use S! FeliCa, is preloaded on handset (see **P.16-2**). Lifestyle-Appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other S! Applications.

Network S! Applications

- Network S! Applications require Internet connection.
 - Before using a Network S! Application, a message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. To skip this confirmation, see **P.15-8**.

S! Appli Library

Open S! Appli Library to access S! Applications saved on handset or Memory Card.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli

1 Select S! Appli and press

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press **Options**
 - ➔ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ➔ Press
- To open Java™ Licence Information, select **Information** ➔ Press

- Tip** ▶ When is pressed in Standby with an S! Application paused, **Application is suspended.** appears. Select **End** and press to open S! Appli Library.

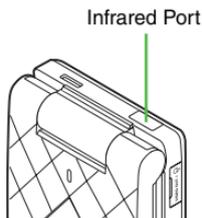
Memory Status

- Press ➔ Select **Data Folder** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Memory Status** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Phone Memory or Memory Card** ➔ Press

Remote Control

Use handset to control a TV, VCR, etc. (A compatible S! Application is required.)

- Align Infrared Port (right) with infrared port of target device.
- Maximum usage distance is approximately five metres (with a fully charged battery).
- Remote control operation may not be possible depending on ambient light level, obstacles, etc.



S! Applications on Memory Card

Synchronise Memory Cards used on other SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices to update S! Appli Library. Retrieve Network Information beforehand (see P.1-20).

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Synchronisation

1 Choose Yes and press

Tip ▶ It may take some time to update S! Appli Library depending on the number of files saved, etc.

Video Output

Connect handset to a TV, VCR, etc. with the supplied Video Cable to view S! Applications on the target device.

- Use Video Output with compatible S! Applications; confirm compatibility in **Video out** in properties (see P.15-6).
- Before performing the steps below, connect Video Cable to handset and device (see P.9-10).

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ S! Appli

1 Select an S! Application and press

2 Press

S! Application appears on the device.

- Press  to toggle display between the device and handset.

Note ▶

- For eye safety, avoid playing S! Applications on an external device for long periods.
- S! Applications started from Screensaver do not support Video Output.

Downloading S! Applications

- Retrieve Network Information beforehand (see P.1-20).
- Some S! Applications can be downloaded to Memory Cards.
- Make sure signal is strong.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ S! Appli ▶ Download

1 Open an Internet site offering S! Applications

2 Select an S! Application and press

Properties appear.

- When an S! Application is paused (⏸ appears), choose **Yes**
▶ Press

3 Press **Yes**

Download starts.

- Download may take time.
- Press to cancel.

4 Downloaded S! Application is automatically saved and a confirmation appears

- When you download a new version of S! Application set as Screensaver (see P.15-7), Screensaver may be cancelled.

5 Choose **Yes** and press

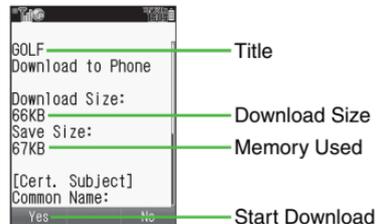
Internet closes and S! Appli Library opens.

- To return to the site, choose **No** and press .
- Starting S! Applications: see P.15-5

Tip ▶ Some S! Applications require Centre Access Code or permission settings. Follow onscreen prompts to use the S! Application (may only be available in Japanese).

Properties

Check S! Application properties before completing download.



Using S! Applications

Starting S! Applications

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli

1 Select S! Appli and press

S! Appli Library opens (see P.15-2).

2 Select an S! Application and press

S! Application starts ( appears).

- For operations, refer to the source Internet site, etc.
- If the S! Application cannot be used, S! Appli Library returns.

Tip ▶ S! Applications automatically pause for incoming transmissions. To set handset to ignore them, see P.15-9 "Calls & Alarms".

Starting Network S! Applications

- If Internet connection confirmation appears after Step 2 above:

Choose Yes or No ▶ Press  ▶ S! Application starts

- To skip confirmation, select **Blanket** for Network Access (see P.15-8 "Setting Permissions").

- Some S! Applications require permission settings (see P.15-8).

Exit, Pause & Resume

Exiting or Pausing S! Applications

1 Press while using an S! Application

 changes to .

2 **Exiting S! Application**

1 Select **End** and press

 disappears and S! Appli Library returns.

Pausing S! Application

1 Select **Suspend** and press

Handset returns to Standby.

- S! Application resumes from pause point.

Resuming S! Applications

1 While an S! Application is paused, press in Standby

-  appears while an S! Application is paused.

2 Select **Resume** and press

 To end the S! Application, select **End** ▶ Press 

 To open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused, select **Cancel** ▶ Press 

Managing S! Applications

Opening S! Application Properties

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

- 1 Select an S! Application and press Options
- 2 Select **Information** and press

Title	Title of the S! Application
Vendor	Name of the distributor (or supplier/manufacturer)
Version	Version of the S! Application
Description	Description of the S! Application
Save Size	Downloaded file size
Recorded	Record game scores, etc. up to this size
Screensaver	Compatibility with Screensaver
Profile	Versions: VSCL (Overseas)/JSCL (Domestic)
Link	Link to source Internet site
Video out	Compatibility with Video Output
Certification	Trusted/Untrusted
Cert. Subject	Authority of Certification (Common Name, Country and Organization)
Push	Compatibility with automatic Internet connection
IC Support	Compatibility with Lifestyle-Appli
Karaoke Support	Compatibility with Karaoke
Comic Support	Compatibility with comic viewing

Press to scroll down.

Moving S! Applications to Memory Card

To move an S! Application set as Screensaver, cancel Screensaver first.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

- 1 Select an S! Application and press Options
- 2 Select **Move to Card** and press

- When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose **Yes** or **No** ► Press
 - Choose **Yes** and press to overwrite.

- Note** ►
- S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card when the same S! Application is already saved or when Memory Card memory is low.
 - Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.

Deleting S! Applications

To delete an S! Application set as Screensaver, cancel Screensaver first.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

- 1 Select an S! Application and press Options
- 2 Select **Delete** and press
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press
 - Handset Code may be required.

- Tip** ► Some preloaded S! Applications can be deleted. To restore them, perform Memory All Clear (see P.15-10).

Screensaver

Set an S! Application to activate when handset enters Standby.

Activating/Canceling Screensaver

Screensaver is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli → Settings → Screensaver → Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** and press

To cancel, choose **Off** → Press

Setting Screensaver

- Only one compatible S! Application can be set for Screensaver.
- Screensaver cannot be set when another S! Application is paused (Ⓜ appears).
- Lifestyle-Appli and S! Applications on Memory Card cannot be set.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli → S! Appli

1 Select an S! Application and press **Options**

2 Select **Set as Screensaver** and press

- **Set as Screensaver** appears for compatible S! Applications.

Activation Time

- Enter time delay before Screensaver activates in Standby.
Press → Select **S! Appli** → Press → Select **Settings** → Press → Select **Screensaver** → Press → Select **Activation Time** → Press → Enter time (01-10 seconds) → Press
- Activation Time is **3** seconds by default.

Note ▶

- Screensaver does not start when Headphones are connected.
- Connecting Headphones (with Memory Card inserted) cancels an active Screensaver.
- Screensaver may not start when an external device (handsfree kit, etc.) is connected to handset.
- Screensaver which responds to incoming transmissions may cancel out selected Mode Settings profile.

Setting Permissions

Customise the method of confirmation, etc. for each S! Application operation below.

- Settings:

Phone Call	Place Voice Calls
Network Access	Connect to the Internet
Messaging	Send/receive messages
Autorun	Execute Autorun files
Bluetooth Conn.	Connect via Bluetooth®
Local Connection	Connect to other devices
Read User Data	Access Phone Book, Calendar, etc.
Write User Data	Edit Phone Book, Calendar, etc.
Use Multimedia	Use Media Player
Location Access	Send Location Information

- These settings are also available for S! Applications on Memory Card.
- Permission settings may not be available for some S! Applications.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ S! Appli

1 Select an S! Application and press **Options**

2 Select *Permission* and press

3 Select an item and press

4 Select an option and press

- Some options may not appear.

Ask Once	Confirmation appears every time the S! Application starts
Always Ask	Confirmation appears before the specific operation
Never Ask	No confirmation
No	Reject the operation

Resetting Permission Settings

- Follow these steps after Step 2 on the left.

Select **Reset** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**

S! Application Operational Settings

Application Volume

Adjust the volume of S! Application sounds

Default Level 3

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Application Volume

Use to adjust level ▶ **Press**

- In Manner mode, volume set in Manner settings applies.

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for S! Applications

Default Normal Settings

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Backlight ▶ Switch On/Off

Select **Always On**, **Always Off** or **Normal Settings** ▶ **Press**

Always On	Backlight remains on while S! Application runs
Always Off	Backlight remains off while S! Application runs
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (see P.9-9)

Blink

When activated, Backlight flashes while compatible S! Applications play

Default On

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Backlight ▶ Blink

Choose On (activate) or Off ▶ Press

Vibration

When activated, handset vibrates while compatible S! Applications play

Default On

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Vibration

Choose On (activate) or Off ▶ Press

- In Manner mode, vibration set in Manner settings applies.

Calls & Alarms

Select a handset response to incoming calls, etc. while an S! Application is active

Default Call/Alarm/Start Priority, Message Notice

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Calls & Alarms

Select from Voice Call to Start Demand ▶ Press

▶ **Select a handset response ▶ Press**

Call/Message/ Alarm/ Start Priority	S! Application pauses for incoming call/ mail, Alarm or S! Appli Request
Call/Message/ Alarm/ Start Notice	A message appears for incoming calls, mail, etc. For example, 090392XXXX1 appears. Press  to answer a call.

- Regardless of setting, a message appears for S! Applications started from Screensaver.

Surround

Set surround effect for S! Applications

Default On

Use Headphones to enjoy surround effect.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Surround

Choose On or Off ▶ Press

Reset**Set to Default**

Reset S! Application settings

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Set to Default

Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ▶ **Choose Yes ▶ Press**

- The settings affected by Set to Default:

Application Volume		Level 3
Backlight	Switch On/Off	Normal Settings
	Blink	On
Vibration		On
Calls & Alarms	Voice Call	Call Priority
	Video Call	Call Priority
	Incoming Message	Message Notice
	Alarm	Alarm Priority
Start Demand		Start Priority
Surround		On
Screensaver	Switch On/Off	Off
	Activation Time	03 seconds

Memory All Clear

Restore S! Appli Library to default setting

Main Menu ▶ *S! Appli* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Memory All Clear*

Enter Handset Code ▶ **Press** ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶
Press

- Note** ▶
- Memory All Clear deletes downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Appli.
 - Memory All Clear resets Near Chat application password and thus cancels Near Chat access restriction.
 - Preloaded S! Applications are restored.

S! FeliCa (Japanese Only)

Basics

S! FeliCa encompasses a range of IC Card-based services available via FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 810SH and 811SH support S! FeliCa. To use services such as e-money, e-ticketing and reward point systems, simply hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at a shop or restaurant, etc.

FeliCa

- A contactless IC card technology enabling wireless data transmissions with compatible reader/writer terminals

IC Card

- The FeliCa chip embedded in FeliCa-compatible handsets
- Holds information required to use S! FeliCa

Lifestyle-Appli

- S! Applications required to use S! FeliCa
 - Edy e-money Lifestyle-Appli is preloaded on handset.
 - Edy is a prepaid e-money service run by bitWallet Inc.

Note ► IC Card data content varies by service and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact service providers for details.

Service Usage Outline

Download Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet site.

- Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Lifestyle-appli folder.



Complete Registration/Set Up

Activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration/ customise settings.

- Charge accounts, check balance or payment records, etc.



Use Service

To use S! FeliCa at shops, restaurants, and locations, place  logo over reader/writer.

- Use e-money/e-tickets to shop/travel; earn reward points.

Note ►

- Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage vary; contact the service provider for details.
- SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli

To use S! FeliCa, activate a service Lifestyle-Appli and complete service registration, setup, charge, balance check, etc.

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli

1 Select **Lifestyle-appli** and press

To download a Lifestyle-Appli, select **Download** ▶ Press 

2 Select an application and press

Lifestyle-Appli starts.

To end the Lifestyle-Appli, press 

Note ▶ Lifestyle-Appli cannot be started during calls or when another S! Application is active.

Tip ▶ Lifestyle-Appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other S! Applications (see **P.15-6 - 15-10**). However, Lifestyle-Appli cannot be set as Screensaver.

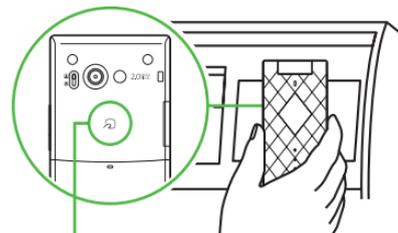
Using S! FeliCa

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction.

Example: making an electronic payment:

- Complete registration, setup and charge in advance.
- Complete transactions without activating a Lifestyle-Appli.

1 Place logo over reader/writer



Place this part
over reader/writer

- Confirm scan results on reader/writer display.
- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.

Note ▶

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.
- Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

- Tip** ▶
- When placed over sensor, handset may display a message, vibrate or activate mail, Internet or an S! Application for some services. To disable response, see **P.16-7** "Interface Settings".
 - Reader/writer will scan FeliCa IC Card even during calls or Internet transmissions. (It may take some time.)

When Handset Power is Off

- Transactions possible; Lifestyle-Appli does not start automatically.
 - After installing/reinstalling battery, always turn on handset power to use S! FeliCa.

When Battery is Low

- S! FeliCa is not available. Charge it beforehand.

S! FeliCa Settings

IC Card Status

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings

1 Select **IC Card Status** and press

- If IC Card Lock is set, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press
- Press to exit.

IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorised use of S! FeliCa on handset.

IC Card Lock is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings ▶ IC Card Lock

1 Choose **On** and press

- To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press

2 Enter Handset Code and press

3 Choose **Yes** and press

Remote Lock

Send mail with specified subject (Mail Remote Lock) or call from a specified phone (Call Remote Lock).

Preparation on Handset

Mail Remote Lock Password/Address

Save a password for Mail Remote Lock, and set mail address to send IC Card Lock notice to.

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings ▶ Remote Lock

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press
- 2 Select *Mail Remote Lock* and press
- 3 Select *Remote Lock PW* and press
- 4 Enter a password and press
 - Enter between 5 and 16 alphanumerics.
- 5 Select *LockNoticeSettings* and press
- 6 Select *Email Lock Notice* and press

7 Sending Notice to Remote Lock Activator

- 1 Select *As Reply* and press

Press to return.

Sending Notice to Specified Address

- 1 Select *AddressTo Notice* and press
- 2 Select *Address to Notice* and press
- 3 Select *Phone Book, Enter Number or Email Address* and press
- 4 Select/enter mail address or SoftBank handset number and press

Press to return.

Disabling Notice

- 1 Choose *Off* and press

Press to return.

8 To save settings without enabling Mail Remote Lock, press **Save**

- To enable Mail Remote Lock, perform from Step 3 in "Remote Lock Setup" on P.16-6 and choose *On* in Step 4.

Call Remote Lock Number/Count for Lock

Save up to two phone numbers from which to call handset, and set Missed Call count required to activate IC Card Lock (default count is 3 times).

Enable Remote Lock activation via public phones.

Main Menu

Lifestyle-appli → IC Card Settings → Remote Lock

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press
- 2 Select **Call Remote Lock** and press
- 3 Select **Phone No. to Lck 1** and press
 - To enable activation via public phone, select **Set Public Phone** → Press → Choose **On** → Press
 - To disable activation via public phone, choose **Off**.
- 4 Select **Phone Book** or **Enter Number** and press
- 5 Select/enter a phone number and press
 - To save second phone number, select **Phone No. to Lck 2** → Press → Repeat Steps 4 - 5
- 6 Select **Count for Lock** and press
 - 3 times is set by default.

7 Enter Missed Call count (3 - 10 consecutive times) required to activate IC Card Lock and press

- To enable Call Remote Lock, perform from Step 3 in "Remote Lock Setup" below and choose **On** in Step 4.

8 To save settings without enabling Call Remote Lock, press Save

Remote Lock Setup

Activate or cancel Mail Remote Lock/Call Remote Lock. Both Remote Locks are **Off** by default.

Main Menu

Lifestyle-appli → IC Card Settings → Remote Lock

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press
- 2 Select **Mail Remote Lock** or **Call Remote Lock** and press
- 3 Select **Switch On/Off** and press
- 4 Choose **On** and press
 - To cancel, choose **Off** → Press
 - Saved mail address and phone numbers remain. Reactivate Remote Lock to use the same setting.
- 5 Press Save

Activating Remote Lock

■ Via Mail

1 Use S! Mail/e-mail to send password to handset

- Enter password as subject; leave other fields blank.
- To confirm IC Card Lock status, send a message via phone or PC with specified mail address (see P.16-5 "Mail Remote Lock Password/Address").

After Handset Receives Message

- IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent from handset to specified mail address.

Note ► If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

■ Via Phone

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

2 End the call

The call is recorded as a Missed Call on your handset.

- Within three minutes, repeat Steps 1 - 2 until the specified number of Missed Calls are recorded.
- Public phones can be used for this function if Set Public Phone is activated beforehand.
- Send Caller ID when placing calls from specified phone. (Caller ID is not required for public phones.)

After Specified Number of Missed Calls

- IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation.

- Note** ►
- Missed Call count is reset by calls from numbers not saved for this function. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
 - When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

Interface Settings

Set handset response to reader/writer commands: Choose **On** for **S! Appli** to activate S! Application, **Browser** to access Internet, **Messaging** to activate mail, **Vibration** to vibrate handset, and **Pop-up Message** to open pop-up message. Interface Settings is **On** for all items by default.

Main Menu ► Lifestyle-appli ► IC Card Settings ► Interface Settings

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press
- 2 Select from **S! Appli** to **Pop-up Message** and press
- 3 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

Resetting Defaults

Cancel custom settings and return S! FeliCa settings to their defaults.

Main Menu

▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings ▶ Set to Default

1 Enter Handset Code and press

2 Choose Yes and press

- Note** ▶
- Set to Default does not affect downloaded Lifestyle-Appli.
 - Reset All (see **P.9-25**)/Memory All Clear (see **P.15-10**) return Lifestyle-Appli settings to defaults and delete downloaded Lifestyle-Appli. Reset All and Memory All Clear are disabled if IC Card data remains.

Entertainment

S! Cast (Japanese Only)

Basics

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically overnight.

- A separate subscription and registration are required.
- After registration, Weather Indicator (see P.17-4) appears in Standby.
- S! Cast is only available within Japan on compatible 3G handsets.
- Retrieve Network Information (see P.1-20) before using S! Cast.

S! Cast Content

Sample S! Cast information page:



Content

Cursor (see P.14-6)

Service Registration & Content Subscription

Complete service registration to use S! Cast, then subscribe to content.

Registration and subscription require Internet use (connection fees apply). Confirm signal strength beforehand.

Main Menu ► Entertainment ► CAST

1 Select **Join/CancelService** and press

Handset connects to the Internet and service registration page opens.

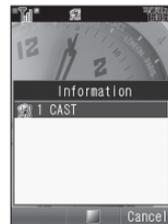
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Received Information

Newly Arrived Information

1 Delivery Notice appears and Information window opens (鐘 appears) for new information

- If closed, open handset for new information to see Delivery Notice appear and Information window open.



Information

2 Select **CAST** and press

Information appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Information handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.
 - Using Cursor: see P.14-6
 - Saving Files to Data Folder: see P.14-11
 - Using Linked Info: see P.14-12

3 Press to exit

Requesting Re-Delivery

■ If information delivery fails, follow these steps to request re-delivery of latest information. (Make sure signal is strong and stable.)

Press  → Select **Entertainment** → Press  →
Select **CAST** → Press  → Select **Demand**
Re-delivery → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 

Stored Information

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment → CAST

1 Latest Information

1 Select **What's New** and press 

Back Issues

1 Select **Back Number** and press 

2 Select date and press 

2 Select an item and press

Information appears.

3 Press to exit

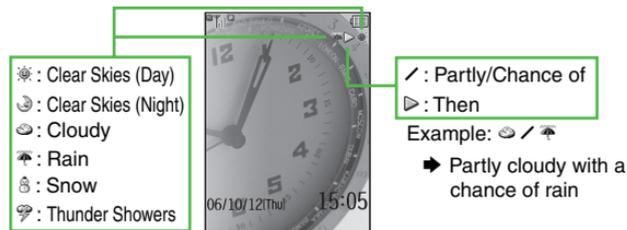
Using Information

Save Sound/ Chaku-Uta®	Select Save → Press 
Change Font Size	Press  Options → Select Font Size → Press  → Select a size → Press 
Change Scroll Unit	Press  Options → Select Scroll Unit → Press  → Select a unit → Press 
Copy Text	Press  Options → Select Copy → Press  → Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.3-12
Open Properties	Press  Options → Select Property → Press  ■ Press  to exit.

Using Weather Indicator

After registration with S! Cast (see **P.17-2**), the weather forecast for your current location appears.

Indicators & Updates



- ☁ (chance of rain), 🍁 (fall foliage season), etc. appear at the same time.
- Weather Indicator is updated when:
 - Weather Indicator update time arrives
 - Manually updated

Activating/Cancelling Weather Indicator

Show or hide Weather Indicator in Standby. **On** (show) is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ CAST ▶ Weather Icon ▶ Settings

- 1 Select **Standby Settings** and press
- 2 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

Activating/Cancelling Updates

Select whether to activate automatic updates. **On** (activate) is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ CAST ▶ Weather Icon ▶ Settings

- 1 Select **Icon Update** and press
- 2 Choose **On** or **Off** and press
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press

Weather Indicator is updated when update time arrives.

Manual Update Update Weather Indicator manually

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ CAST ▶ Weather Icon

Select **Manual Update** ▶ Press

- Handset connects to the Internet and Weather Indicator is updated.

Note ▶ Activate **Icon Update** (see above) beforehand.

Weather Forecast (Japanese Only)

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ CAST ▶ Weather Icon

- 1 Select **Weather** and press
- Information appears.

Electronic Books

Read XMDf or Text format E-Books saved on handset/
Memory Card.

- E-Book dictionaries turn handset into an electronic dictionary.
- Adjust Text Code (see **P.17-6**) for E-Books in other languages.
- Handset may not support some embedded sounds/images.
- E-Book folder cannot be accessed during Synchronisation.

Downloading E-Books

- Press **[F2]** → Select **Yahoo! Keitai** → Press **[F2]** → Select **Yahoo! Keitai** → Press **[F2]** → Select **メニューリスト** → Press **[F2]** → Select **書籍・コミック・写真集** → Press **[F2]**
 - Visit Sharp Space Town (see **P.14-9**) for more information on E-Books (how to purchase, etc.).

Support Book (Japanese Only)

- Download Support Book (E-Book on 810SH/811SH operational tips) via Sharp Space Town (see **P.14-9**).

Reading Content

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment

1 Select E-Book and press **[F2]**

Book contents list appears. (When you press **[F4]** to close Reading window, the same page will open next time.)

- To read E-Books saved in other folders, press **[F4]** **Options** → Select **Switch Folders** → Press **[F2]** → Select a folder → Press **[F2]**
 - Selected item appears next time E-Book is selected.
 - Access E-Books saved in **Book** and **Book (SD)** from Entertainment or Data Folder (Books).

2 Select an E-Book and press **[F2]**

- ○% indicates location of the current page.
- If the E-Book is password protected, enter password → Press **[F2]** → Reading window opens
- To see the title, author, etc., press **[F4]** **Options** → Select **Property** → Press **[F2]**
 - Press **[F4]** to exit.

3 Press **[F4]** to close

- The last page opened will appear next time.

- Note** ▶
- E-Books automatically close for low battery, five minutes of inactivity, or Memory Card removal.
 - Only **zbf**, **zbs**, **zbk**, **txt** or **text** files appear in contents list.
 - Revised E-Books are not supported.

Key Assignments

- Operations vary by text orientation as follows.

	Horizontal	Vertical
	Scroll up (by line)	Backward (by page)
	Scroll down (by line)	Forward (by page)
	Backward (by page)	Scroll left (by line)
	Forward (by page)	Scroll right (by line)

For some E-Books, use / to scroll by page.

Text Operations

- Jump to the first or last page.
Press  **Options** ➔ **Select *Jump to Top* or *Jump to Bottom*** ➔ Press 
- Move to a specific location.
Press  **Options** ➔ **Select *Move to specified %*** ➔ Press  ➔ **Enter location by percentage (00 - 99%)** ➔ Press 
- Select a chapter when a table of contents is contained.
Press  **Options** ➔ **Select *Contents*** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select a chapter** ➔ Press 
- Move back to link source or open link again.
Press  **Options** ➔ **Select *Back* or *Next*** ➔ Press 
- Return to E-Book list.
Press  **Options** ➔ **Select *Back to List*** ➔ Press 
- See P.17-7 to use Bookmarks.

Using Linked Info/Copying Text

- Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs to place calls, send messages or access Internet sites.
Select an Item ➔ Press  ➔ **Choose *Yes*** ➔ Press 
- Some linked information may not be usable.

- Copy text (up to 20 characters).

In Reading window, press  **Options** ➔ **Select *Copy***
➔ Press  ➔ **Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on P.3-12**

- Dictionary index text and search results cannot be copied.
- Images and ruby annotations cannot be copied.

Reading Window Settings

Press  **Options** ➔ **Select *Settings*** ➔ Press  ➔
Select an Item ➔ Press  ➔ **Change the setting** ➔
Press 

Item	Description	Default
Font Size	Select <i>Tiny, Small, Standard, Large</i> or <i>Huge</i>	Standard
Text Orientation	Read text vertically or horizontally	Vertical Text*
Ruby	Show/hide ruby annotations	Off
Text Code	Set encoding to <i>Shift-JIS, Latin-1</i> or <i>Latin-9</i>	Shift-JIS
Image Size	Select <i>Default Size</i> or <i>Double Size</i>	Default Size
View Settings	Select <i>Detail View</i> or <i>Page View</i>	Detail View
Vibration	Activate/cancel vibration	On
Resolution	Set to <i>Low, Normal</i> or <i>High</i>	Low

*May vary by E-Book.

- Above settings are not available for some content.

Mask & Jump

- Some E-Books may contain hidden text or images (masked info) or links (jump links).
 - Select masked info and press to see the text or image. Press again to hide.
 - Select a jump link and press to jump to the specified page. Press to return.

Folders and Files in E-Book Folders

- Open E-Book list first.
 - Adding Folders
Press **Options** → **Select New Folder** → Press → **Enter name** → Press
 - Editing Folder/File Names
Select a folder/file → Press **Options** → **Select Change Name** → Press → **Edit** → Press
 - Deleting Folders/Files
Select a folder/file → Press **Options** → **Select Delete** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press
 - Moving Files
Select a file → Press **Options** → **Select Move** → Press → **Select a location** → Press → Press

Tip ► The above operations are not available for E-Books in Data Folder (handset/Memory Card). For managing folders/files on handset, see P.8-7.

Bookmark

Add bookmarks to return to the pages easily.
Use two bookmarks per E-Book (for up to five E-Books).

1 Press

■ If **Marker** is not on Display, press **Options** → **Select Bookmark** → Press

2 Select **Bookmark1** or **Bookmark2** and press

Bookmark is added.

Auto Bookmark

- When Reading window is closed, Auto Bookmark 1 is added to the last page opened. When the same E-Book is opened and closed again, Auto Bookmark 1 changes to Auto Bookmark 2.
 - Each E-Book holds up to two Auto Bookmarks, the oldest of which is deleted first when a new one is added.

Opening Bookmarked Page

- In Reading window, press **Options** → **Select Move to Bookmark** → Press → **Select Bookmark1, Bookmark2, Auto Bookmark1 or Auto Bookmark2** → Press

Using E-Book Images

Embedded Information Save images as Wallpaper or use information contained in images

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ E-Book ▶ Open E-Book

Select an image ▶ Press

• Soft Key Assignments:

Assign	Save images as Wallpaper <input type="checkbox"/> For images smaller or larger than Display, select Centred , Full Screen or Fit Image ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> (For Display size images or Centred , use <input type="downarrow"/> to zoom in/out or press <input type="square"/> to rotate.)
Jump to	Select jump information to move to other pages. Use linked information to send S! Mail messages or access Internet sites (E-Book will close). See P.17-6 "Using Linked Info/Copying Text".
Switch	Hidden text or images appear
Play	Animation plays

Using a Dictionary

Look Up Word Use downloaded E-Book dictionaries to look up word definitions, etc.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ E-Book

Select a dictionary ▶ Press ▶ Select an entry field ▶ Press ▶ Enter a word ▶ Press

- Select an entry and press to view its definitions.
- Key Assignments: see P.17-6

ComicSurfing® (Japanese Only)

Activate ComicSurfing® S! Application to read comics, photo books and other CCF files saved in Data Folder (Books). To read fee-based CCF files, download Content Keys.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment

1 Select **ComicSurfing** and press

ComicSurfing® S! Application starts.

- Refer to the ComicSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.
- When an S! Application is paused, **Application suspended. End application?** appears. Choose **Yes** and press to start ComicSurfing®.

Note ▶ When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files via Memory Card and retrieve Content Key to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Tip ▶ Save CCF files to handset/Memory Card Data Folder (Books).

Communication

S! Town (Japanese Only)

S! Town is an online communication application. Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can participate in events and meet other users.

- Usage requires the pre-installed S! Town S! Application.
- S! Town S! Application cannot be deleted.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.
- S! Town is not available if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

Using S! Town

When using S! Town for the first time, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.

Main Menu ► *Communication*

1 Select **S! Town** and press

S! Town starts.

- Refer to the S! Town S! Application's help menu for operational instructions.

Tip ►

- Check registration status or cancel registration via Yahoo! Keitai. For details, refer to the S! Town S! Application's help menu.
- An upgrade notice may appear when starting S! Town. Follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

S! Town Library

Save S! Town-compatible S! Applications to S! Town Library.

- Start S! Applications from S! Town Library. (S! Town may start for some applications.)
- S! Town-compatible S! Applications are not saved in S! Town Library by default.

Main Menu ▶ Communication

1 Select **S! Town** and press **Library**

S! Town Library opens.

Tip ▶ Downloaded S! Town-compatible applications are automatically saved to S! Town Library.

S! Loop (Japanese Only)

S! Loop is a communication service.

Main Menu ▶ Communication

1 Select **S! Loop** and press

Handset connects to the Internet and S! Loop Main Menu opens.

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Near Chat (Japanese Only)

- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear (see **P.15-10**) that may be used to reset the application password.
- For more about password restriction, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.
- Because Near Chat employs Bluetooth® technology, users may receive unsolicited connection requests from unknown sources. To reject such requests, choose **No** and press in Step 2 on **P.18-5** "Receiving Near Chat Request".

Basics

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten metres.

- Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.
- Usage requires the pre-installed Near Chat S! Application.

- Note** ▶
- Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.
 - Near Chat S! Application cannot be deleted.

Using Near Chat

Setup

Activate the following Bluetooth® settings beforehand.

Bluetooth®	See P.10-2 (choose On)
Visibility	See P.10-4 (Select Show My Phone)
S! Appli Request	See P.18-5 (choose On)

- Note** ▶
- Always activate Bluetooth® to use Near Chat.
 - When Bluetooth® is active and Visibility is set to **Show My Phone**, handset may receive unsolicited connection requests from other Bluetooth® devices.
 - Set Visibility to **Show My Phone** and activate S! Appli Request to receive Near Chat request from other parties.

- Tip** ▶ Starting Near Chat activates Bluetooth® and sets Visibility to **Show My Phone**. Bluetooth® remains active even after ending Near Chat but Visibility returns to its previous state.

■ S! Appli Request

S! Appli Request is **On** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☑) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings ▶ S! Appli Request ▶ Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

- For **On**, if **Activate Bluetooth?** appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

■ Sending Near Chat Request

Main Menu ▶ Communication

1 Select **Near chat** and press

- If **Activate Bluetooth?** appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

2 Send Near Chat request via the application

- Near Chat starts when the other party accepts your request.

3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (see P.15-5)

■ Receiving Near Chat Request

1 When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and Bluetooth® Notification appears

- After 30 seconds of inactivity, the tone sounds again, notification appears and Information window opens.
- Check request log in Latest Information (see below).



2 Choose **Yes** and press

Near Chat S! Application starts.

- For details, read the instructions on the application.
- To reject request, choose **No** ▶ Press

3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (see P.15-5)

Latest Information Open details of the most recently received Near Chat request

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☑) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings ▶ S! Appli Request

Select **Latest Information** ▶ Press

- Press to exit.

Appendix

Function List

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to
Communication	S! Town	P.18-2
	S! Loop	P.18-3
	Near chat	P.18-4
Yahoo! Keitai	Yahoo! Keitai	P.14-3
	Bookmarks	P.14-9
	Saved Pages	P.14-9
	Enter URL	P.14-4
	History	P.14-4
	Live Monitor	P.14-14
	PC Site Browser	P.14-17
	Common Settings	P.14-20
Media Player	Music	P.7-10
	Videos	P.7-12
	Streaming	P.14-12
Messaging	Received Msg.	P.13-23
	Create Message	P.13-7
	Retrieve New Msg.	P.13-19
	Drafts	P.13-18
	Templates	P.13-15
	Sent Messages	P.13-23
	Unsent Messages	P.13-23
	Server Mail Box	P.13-22
	Create New SMS	P.13-7
	Settings	P.13-35
Memory Status	P.13-3	

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to	
Camera	—	P.6-2	
Data Folder	Pictures	P.8-2	
	DCIM	P.8-2	
	My Pictograms	P.8-2	
	Ring Songs*Tones	P.8-2	
	S! Appli	P.15-2	
	Music	P.8-2	
	Videos	P.8-2	
	Lifestyle-appli	P.16-2	
	Books	P.8-2	
	Custom Screens	P.9-6	
	Flash [®]	P.8-2	
	Flash [®] Ringtones	P.8-2	
Other Documents	P.8-2		
Memory Status	P.8-2		
Tools	Tools 1	Calendar	P.11-2
		Alarms	P.11-11
		Calculator	P.11-14
		Tasks	P.11-7
	Tools 2	World Clock	P.11-14
		Voice Recorder	P.11-15
		Document Viewer	P.11-17
		Stopwatch	P.11-24
	Tools 3	Countdown Timer	P.11-24
		Expenses Memo	P.11-25
		Text Templates	P.11-26
		Barcode	P.11-18
Entertainment	Phone Help	P.11-26	
	ComicSurfing	P.17-8	
	E-Book	P.17-5	
	CAST	P.17-2	

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to		
S! Appli	S! Appli	P.15-2		
	Settings	P.15-3		
	Information	P.15-2		
Lifestyle-appli	Lifestyle-appli	P.16-2		
	IC Card Settings	P.16-4		
Phone	Phone Book List	P.4-2		
	Add New Entry	P.4-4		
	Information	P.2-7		
	Call Log	P.2-13		
	Play Messages	P.2-10		
	Call Voicemail	P.12-4		
	Category Control	P.4-11		
	My Details	P.4-19		
	Speed Dial List	P.4-13		
	Contact Groups	P.4-12		
	S! Address Book	P.4-15		
	Ph.Book Settings	P.4-9		
	Manage Entries	P.4-8		
	Settings	Phone Settings	Mode Settings	P.9-2
			Display	P.9-3
Custom Screens			P.9-6	
Sounds & Alerts			P.9-12	
Date & Time			P.9-16	
言語選択 (Language)			P.9-6	
User Dictionary			P.9-17	
Ringer Output			P.9-15	
Earpiece Volume			P.9-15	
Simple Menu			P.2-21	
Locks			P.9-18	
Software Update			P.19-8	
Master Reset			P.9-24	

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to	
Settings	Connectivity	Bluetooth	P.10-2
		Infrared	P.10-10
		Mass Storage	P.10-14
		Memory Card	P.8-18
	Call/Video Call	Call Time & Cost	P.2-14
		Answer Phone	P.2-9
		Voicemail/Divert	P.12-2
		Video Call	P.5-6
		Show My Number	P.12-10
		out Missed Calls	P.12-5
		Int'l Calling	P.9-25
		Disp. Time/Call	P.9-27
		Call Barring	P.12-7
		Minute Minder	P.9-27
Auto Answer	P.9-26		
Call Waiting	P.12-5		
Network Settings	Select Network	P.10-15	
	Select Service	P.2-16	
	Offline Mode	P.2-20	
	Retrieve NW Info	P.10-16	
	Location Info	P.10-16	
	Network Info	P.10-15	

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Was  pressed and held long enough? Battery may need to be charged. Battery may not be properly installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold  longer. Charge battery or install a charged battery. Install battery properly.
Handset won't respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry On? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If On, PIN1 is required. Enter PIN1 according to onscreen instructions. For more, see P.9-21.
Insert USIM Card appears in Standby and handset is unresponsive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> USIM Card may not be properly inserted. The correct USIM Card may not be inserted. There may be debris on IC chip/terminals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure USIM Card is properly inserted. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged. Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid. Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.
Keypad won't respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keypad Lock may be active. ( appears) Function Lock may be active. ( appears) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel Keypad Lock (see P.1-21). Cancel Function Lock (see P.9-22).
Cannot place call from Phone Book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The number may be saved as Secret entry. Phone Book Lock may be active. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activate Show Secret Data (see P.9-24). Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.9-23).
out appears in Standby and call won't connect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset may be outside the service area or otherwise beyond signal transmission range. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Did you include the dialling code or the first 0? • Handset may be out-of-range. (out appears) • Handset Offline Mode may be active. (📵 appears) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dial the number including the dialling code or 0. • Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. • Cancel Offline Mode (see P.2-20).
Call is choppy or cut off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network signal may be weak. • Battery may need to be charged or replaced. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. • Charge battery or install a charged battery.
Line is noisy during calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network signal may be weak or unstable. 	—
Battery won't charge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset or Desktop Holder. • AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to outlet. • Battery may not be properly installed. • Handset may not be properly inserted into Desktop Holder. • There may be debris on: terminals (handset, battery or Desktop Holder); connector (AC Charger); Connection Port (Desktop Holder); External Device Port. • Battery may not charge outside 5°C to 35°C. • Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure connector is securely inserted and try again. • Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and try again. • Open handset, install battery properly and try again. • Remove handset and re-insert correctly. • Clean terminals, connector and Port with a cotton swab and try again. • Charge within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C. • Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges quickly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remaining charge shortens charging time. 	—
Handset/Charger/Desktop Holder feels warm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During charging, AC Charger or Desktop Holder normally becomes warm; handset may feel warm to the touch during extended periods of use. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unless handset/accessories become very hot to the touch, this should be considered normal; regardless, avoid prolonged skin contact which could cause burn injuries (see P.xxiv).
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Environmental factors (temperature, charging/signal conditions), usage or settings can affect Battery Time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For more on Battery Time, usage factors and ways to extend Battery Time, see P.1-13 - 1-14.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Display flickers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display may flicker under fluorescent lights. 	—
Display went dark	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leaving handset open with no key presses for a preset period cancels Backlight (Time Out) then panel (Display Saving); this is not a malfunction. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press any key to reactivate Display backlight.

Tip ▶ For repairs and after-sales services, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see **P.19-28**).

Warning Signs

Out appears

Handset is out-of-range.

Move for a better signal.

Battery low. Please connect to charger! appears and short beeps sound

Battery is low (see **P.1-15**).

Charge or replace battery immediately.

Keypad Lock appears

Keypad Lock is active (see **P.1-21**).

Cancel to use Keypad. Press keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-6**) to answer calls.

Function Lock appears

Function Lock is active (see **P.9-22**).

Cancel to place calls, etc.

Press keys for Any Key Answer (see **P.2-6**) to answer calls.

SI Application Display Messages

Display	Cause & Solution
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> Application suspended. End application? </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> Application is suspended. </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An SI Application is paused. ↓ • Close application and try again.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>○○ Download to Phone</p> <p>Download Size: XXKB</p> <p>Save Size: XXKB</p> <p>Download? Battery low. Downlo ad may not be compl eted.</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Download may fail due to low battery. ↓ • Charge battery then try again.

Display	Cause & Solution
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>○○ Not Enough Memory in Phone. Download to Memory Card</p> <p>Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB</p> <p>Download?</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Memory is full. ↓ • Press <input type="checkbox"/> to download or <input type="checkbox"/> to cancel.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Exceeds limit. Cannot save.</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100 S! Applications are already saved. (The message disappears automatically.) ↓ • Delete applications (see P.15-6) and try again.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Same Version Found Continue Download?</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The same version of selected S! Application is already saved. ↓ • Choose Yes (download) or No (cancel) and press <input type="checkbox"/>.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>New Version Found Continue Download?</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An older version of the same S! Application is saved. ↓ • Choose Yes (download) or No (cancel) and press <input type="checkbox"/>.

Tip ▶ S! Applications cannot be downloaded when the following messages appear:

- *Improper data. Cannot download application.*
- *Size too large. Cannot receive.*

Messaging Mishaps

■ When S! Mail is not delivered as sent

Causes include the following. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**).

- **Recipient is not subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail.**
- **Recipient handset is not S! Mail-compatible.**
 - The maximum size of messages/attachments recipient handsets can receive varies by make and model.
- **Recipient handset is not JPEG-compatible.**
 - Some Long Mail-compatible handsets may only be able to process PNG images; convert JPEG files to PNG, then attach and send (see **P.8-16**).

■ When handset memory is insufficient

New messages cannot be delivered (✉ appears in red). Undeliverable mail is saved at the Centre.

- Delete messages to free memory for new ones (see **P.13-29**). When memory is available, new messages are delivered automatically.
- Delete unprotected messages automatically to receive new ones (see **P.13-36**).
- Even if memory is not full, handset cannot receive new messages larger than remaining memory.

Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions

Before updating software, turn power off to end all active functions/applications, then restart handset.

- Choose to begin update or schedule update.
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Connection fees do not apply to updates (including checking for updates, downloading and rewriting).
- Keep handset in a place where signal is strong and stable.
- Charge battery (🔋 appears) beforehand; a low battery may cause update to fail.
- Do not remove battery during update; update may fail.
- To reduce risk of failure, disconnect USB Cable from handset beforehand.

Updating Software

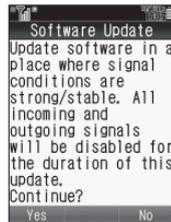
Read Software Update Precautions (left) beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings* (⚙️) ▶ *Software Update*

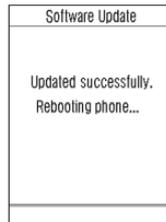
1 Select *Software Update* and press

Confirmation appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions. (🔋 appears during update.)
- Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Confirmation appears for successful update then handset restarts. Completion message appears and Information window opens (ℹ️ appears).
 - While completion message appears, press to acknowledge update completion and cancel Information window.



Confirmation



Update Complete

- Note** ▶ Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see P.19-28).



Update Failure

Update Result

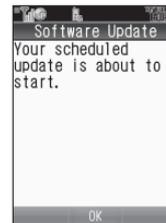
- While Information window appears, select **Update Result** ▶ Press
 - Press again to exit.
- In Standby, press ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select **Phone Settings** ▶ Select **Software Update** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Update Result** ▶ Press
 - Press again to exit.



Update Result

Scheduled Update

- Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press or wait approximately ten seconds for update to start.
 - Update will not start while handset is in use. When the current operation ends, confirmation appears. After ten minutes, scheduled update is automatically cancelled.
 - Update automatically cancels Keypad Lock.



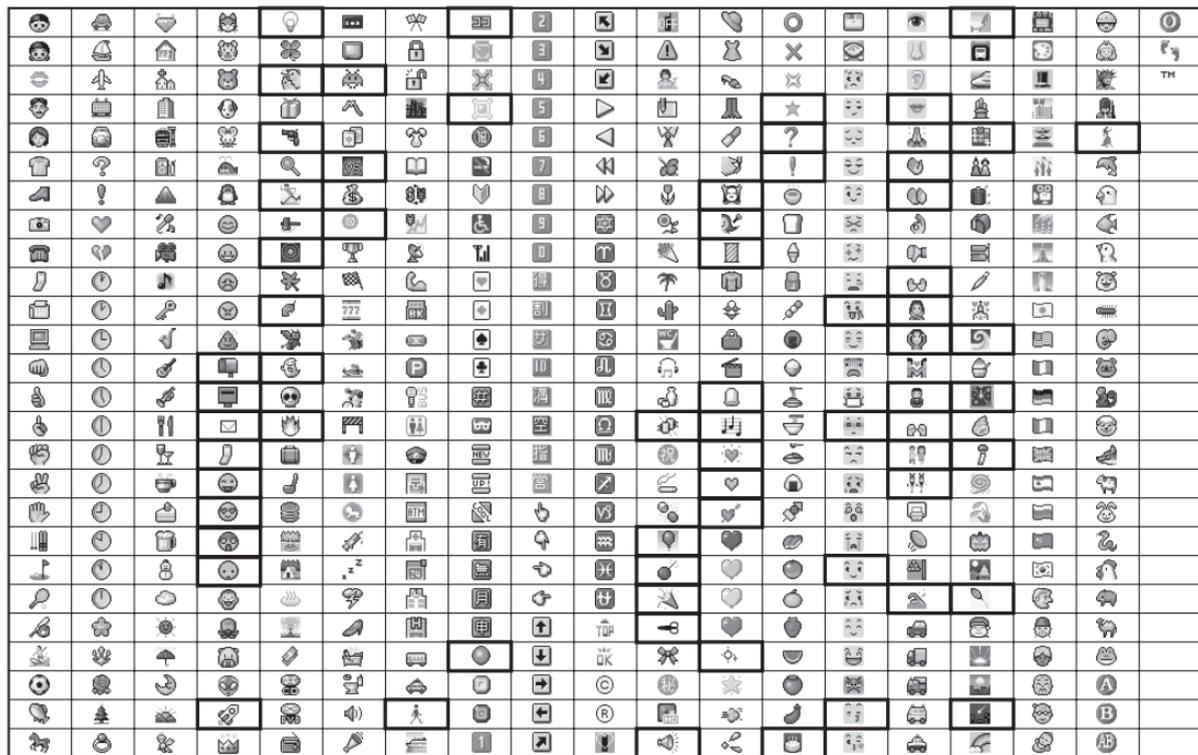
Confirmation

- Note** ▶
- Handset Phone Book entries, media files, and other content are not affected by firmware updates, but users should always back up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost information, etc.
 - If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart handset.

Character Code List

First Three Digits										Last Digit										First Three Digits										Last Digit										First Three Digits										Last Digit																																																																																																																																																							
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9										0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9										0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9										0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9										0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9										0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9																																																																																																																																																							
010	011	012	013	014	015	016	017	018	019	020	021	022	023	024	026	027	028	029	031	032	033	034	035	036	037	038	039	040	041	042	043	044	045	046	047	048	050	051	052	053	054	055	056	057	058	060	061	062	063	064	065	070	071	072	073	074	075	076	077	078	080	081	082	083	160	049	050	051	052	053	054	055	056	057	058	059	060	061	062	063	064	065	066	067	068	069	070	071	072	073	074	075	076	077	078	079	080	081	082	083	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200	201	202	203	204	205	206	207	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223	224	225	226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239	240	241	242	243	244	245	246

Pictogram List



Note ▶ Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

Tip ▶ Pictograms in are animated.

Specifications

■ 810SH

Weight	Approximately 117 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 150 minutes (3G) Approximately 260 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time (handset closed)	Approximately 330 hours (3G) Approximately 330 hours (GSM)
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	Approximately 80 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger : Approximately 150 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 150 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 50 x 100 x 21 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.

■ 811SH

Weight	Approximately 117 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 150 minutes (3G) Approximately 260 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time (handset closed)	Approximately 330 hours (3G) Approximately 330 hours (GSM)
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	Approximately 80 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger : Approximately 150 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 150 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 50 x 100 x 21 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

- Talk Time/Standby Time decrease with frequent use of Display/Keypad backlights.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may decrease when an S! Application is active.
- Talk Time/Standby Time decrease with handset use in poor signal conditions (see **P.1-13** "Battery Time").
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

■ AC Charger

Power Source	AC 100V-240V, 50/60 Hz
Power Consumption	12VA
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.2V/650 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C to 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 55 x 45 x 22 mm (without protruding parts, cord)
Cord Length	Approximately 1.5 m

■ Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	810 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 37.8 x 5.8 x 36.9 mm (without protruding parts)

■ Video Cable

Weight	Approximately 65 g
Cord Length	Approximately 2.5 m

Memory List

Messaging	
Received Msg.	Approximately 4 MB
Drafts	Approximately 2 MB ¹
Sent Messages	Approximately 2 MB ¹
Unsent Messages	Approximately 2 MB ¹
Templates	Approximately 20 MB ²

¹Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages share memory.

²Shared with S! Appli Library and Data Folder.

S! Applications	
S! Appli	Approximately 20 MB* (100 items) on handset

Shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder.

Data Folder	
Data Folder	Approximately 20 MB*

Shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library.

Index

Number

3D Pictogram	13-24
3G.....	2-16

A

AC Charger.....	1-17
Acquire Dictionary	9-17
Activation Time (S! Application) ...	15-7
Add Date.....	8-25
Add Email Address.....	4-3
Add Frame (Picture Editor).....	8-15
Add Frame (still image capture)....	6-13
Alarm Volume.....	11-13
Alarms	11-11
Alarms (cancelling/reactivating)....	11-13
All Calls	2-13
Alternative Image (Video Call).....	5-6
Answer Phone.....	2-9
Answer Phone (Manner mode).....	9-2
Anti Spam Measures	13-35
Any Key Answer	2-6, 9-2
Application Volume (S! Application)...	15-8
Arrange Mail.....	13-12
Assign Ringtone (by Phone Book Group)..	4-12
Assign Tone/Video	11-4, 11-8, 11-12
Assign Tone/Video (by Phone Book entry) ..	4-5
Attach File	13-10
Authentic Info	14-20
Authentic Info Keep.....	14-22

Authorisation Code	10-3, 10-10
Auto (Network Settings).....	2-16
Auto Add Code	9-26
Auto Answer	9-26
Auto Bookmark (E-Book).....	17-7
Auto Delete	13-36
Auto Play File.....	13-38
Auto Resend (Messaging)	13-35
Auto Save (mobile camera)	6-18

B

Backlight (Display/Keypad)	9-9
Backlight (Media Player).....	7-14
Backlight (S! Application).....	15-8
Backlight (Video Call)	5-7
Backup	8-21
Battery.....	1-12, 1-16
Battery Strength	1-14, 1-15
Bluetooth Timeout.....	10-9
Bluetooth®	10-2
Bookmarks.....	14-9, 14-10
Brightness (Backlight)	9-9
By a-ka-sa-ta-na.....	4-9
By Category	4-9
By Reading.....	4-9

C

Cache.....	14-20
Cache Memory.....	14-2
Calculator.....	11-14

Calendar (schedule).....	11-2
Calendar (Standby)	9-4
Calendar Format.....	9-16
Call Barring.....	12-7
Call Costs.....	2-15
Call Forwarding	12-2
Call Notice/Priority (S! Application)....	15-9
Call Settings	9-25
Call Time Counter	9-27
Call Timers	2-14
Call Voicemail	12-4
Call Waiting.....	12-5
Caller Display (External Display)	9-10
Caller ID (sending/blocking) ...	2-2, 12-10
Calls & Alarms (S! Application)	15-9
Calls (ending)	2-2
Calls (placing).....	2-2, 2-17, 5-3
Camera Effects	6-7, 6-14
Camera Picture.....	5-4, 5-6
Category Control.....	4-11, 4-12
Centre Access Code	1-26
Change List View (Data Folder)	8-3
Change NW Password	12-10
Change PIN.....	9-22
Change to Bcc.....	13-10
Change to Cc.....	13-10
Change to To	13-10
Character Code list.....	19-10
Character Codes (entering).....	3-8

character entry modes.....	3-2
Char-code (Messaging).....	13-37
Char-code (Yahoo! Keitai).....	14-19
charging time.....	1-12, 1-17, 1-18, 1-19
Check Settings.....	8-26
Chng Handset Code.....	9-24
Clock/Calendar.....	9-4
ComicSurfing®.....	8-7, 17-8
Conductor Setting (Face Recognition)...	9-20
Conference Call.....	12-6
Contact Groups.....	4-12
Continuous Shoot.....	6-12
Cookies.....	14-20, 14-21
Copy (text).....	3-12
Copy Text (Web).....	14-19
Cost Units.....	2-15
Countdown Timer.....	11-24
Country Codes.....	9-25
Create QR Code.....	11-21
Crop.....	7-14
cursor.....	14-6
Custom Screens.....	9-6
Cut (images).....	8-12
Cut (text).....	3-12

D

Data Folder.....	8-2
Date Format.....	9-16
Datum On/Off.....	10-16
Daylight Saving.....	9-16, 11-14
Default Image (Video Call).....	5-6
Default View (Calendar).....	11-2

Delete NG.....	13-17
Delete Posterior.....	3-13
Delivery Report.....	13-16, 13-20, 13-35
Demand Re-delivery.....	17-3
Desktop Holder.....	1-18
Details (Data Folder).....	8-6
Details (Internet).....	14-19
Details (Messaging)....	13-18, 13-23, 13-30
Device Name.....	10-9
Dialled Numbers.....	2-4, 2-13
Digital Zoom.....	6-4
Disable DTMF.....	2-12
Display Call Cost.....	9-27
Display Effect.....	13-25
Display indicators.....	1-9
Display Saving.....	9-9
Display settings.....	9-3
Display Size (streaming).....	14-13
Display Size (Video Camera).....	6-16
Display Size (video playback).....	7-14
Document Viewer.....	11-17
Download to.....	14-20
Downloads.....	14-20
DPOF.....	8-25
Drafts (Messaging).....	13-18

E

Earpiece Volume.....	2-11, 5-4, 9-15
E-Book.....	17-5
Edit Category.....	11-25
Emoticons.....	3-8
Enable DTMF.....	2-12

English.....	9-6
Enter URL.....	14-4, 14-14, 14-19
Entertainment.....	17-1
Event Light.....	9-14
Expenses Memo.....	11-25
Expiry Time.....	13-16, 13-37
Exposure (mobile camera).....	6-16
Exposure (Video Call).....	5-6
External Display.....	1-11
External Display (customising settings) ...	9-9

F

Face Arrange (Picture Editor).....	8-14
Face Recognition.....	9-18
fast forward/rewind (video/music)....	7-10
Feeling Mail.....	13-15, 13-20
FeliCa.....	16-2
File Format.....	8-16
File Size (Picture Editor).....	8-16
Flash®.....	8-2
Flash® Ringtones.....	8-2
Font Colour (subtitles).....	7-17
Font Size (E-Book).....	17-6
Font Size (Internet sites).....	14-20
Font Size.....	3-14, 9-4
Font Weight.....	9-4
Format Card (Memory Card).....	8-21
Forward NG.....	13-17
Free Text (Picture Editor).....	8-13
function list.....	19-2
Function Lock.....	9-22

G

Go to	11-5
Greeting Message	9-5
GSM	2-16

H

Handset Closed	1-11
Handset Code	1-26
Handset Lock	9-22
Handset Open	1-11
Handset Security	9-18
Handsfree devices (connecting) ...	10-8
Handsfree Setting	10-9
Help (Internet)	14-5
Help (mobile camera)	6-5
Hide Indicators (Photo Camera)....	6-15
Hide Picture	5-3
High-speed infrared	10-12
Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics Conversion	3-10
History	14-4, 14-18
Hold (Video Call)	5-5
Hold (Voice Call)	2-11
Hold Guidance Pict	5-7

I

IC Card	16-2
IC Card Lock	16-4
IC Card Status	16-4
In-Car Charger	1-19
Incoming calls (answering)	2-6, 5-3

Incoming Calls (Call Barring)	12-8
Incoming calls (Video Call)	5-3
Incoming calls (Voice Call)	2-6
Incoming Picture	5-7
Index Print	8-26
Information	2-7
Information (Media Player)	7-10
Information (S! Application)	15-6
Input Memory	14-8
Interface Settings	16-7
International calls	2-5, 2-17
Internet content	14-2
Int'l Calling	9-25
Int'l Prefix	9-25

K

Key Assignments (text entry)	3-3
Keypad Lock	1-21
Keypad Tones	9-14

L

Language	9-6
Last Played	7-10, 7-12, 14-14
Latest Information (Near Chat)	18-5
LCD Contrast (External Display)	9-10
Lifestyle-appli	16-2
Live Monitor	14-14
Location Info	10-16
Loudspeaker (Video Call)	5-5, 5-7
Loudspeaker (Voice Call)	2-11

M

Mail address (customising handset address)	13-5
Mailbox Volume	13-22
Main Menu	1-22
Manner mode	2-18
Manufacture Number	14-21
Mass Storage	10-14
Master Reset (handset settings) ...	9-24
Max Cost	2-15
Memory All Clear	15-10
Memory Card	8-18
Memory Status (Data Folder)	8-2
Memory Status (Memory Card)	8-24
Memory Status (Messaging)	13-3
Memory Status (Phone Book)	4-8
Memory Status (S! Appli Library) .	15-2
Memory Status (schedule)	11-5
Memory Status (Tasks)	11-10
Merge Panorama	8-16
Message Centre	13-37
Message DL (Abroad)	13-38
Message DL (Japan)	13-38
Message List View	13-4
Message Notice	13-36
Message Notice/Priority (S! Application) ...	15-9
Messaging	13-2
Messaging (checking messages)	13-19, 13-23
Messaging (creating & sending messages) ...	13-7
Messaging (deleting messages)	13-29

Messaging (using attachments).....	13-31
Messaging Settings.....	13-16
Microphone	6-17
Minute Minder	9-27
Mirror Image.....	5-6
Missed Call Notification.....	12-5
Mobile camera	6-2
Mobile Light	6-16
Mode Settings.....	9-2
Modes (Photo Camera)	6-5
Money Converter (Calculator)	11-15
Move to Card.....	15-6
Multi Job.....	1-25
Multi Selector	ii
Music Search	7-3
Mute	2-11, 5-4
Mute Microphone.....	5-7
My Details.....	1-21, 4-19
My Folders.....	13-32
My Pictograms.....	8-2

N

Near chat	18-4
Network (adding, editing & deleting) ...	10-15
Network Info	10-15
Network Password.....	1-26, 12-10
Network S! Applications	15-2
Network Settings	10-15
Normal Finder (Photo Camera)	6-15

O

Offline Mode.....	2-20
One Hiragana Predictive Entry.....	3-11
One Hiragana Word Call	3-11
One-Hiragana Conversion	3-10
Outgoing Calls (Call Barring)	12-8
Outgoing Picture	5-7
Out-of-range	1-9, 19-6
Overlapped.....	6-12

P

Packet transmission volume	2-14
Pager Code	3-8
Pager Code list	3-9
Paired Devices.....	10-4
Paste (Picture Editor).....	8-13
Paste.....	3-12
PC Site Browser	14-17
Permission	9-21, 15-8
Phone Book	4-2
Phone Book (deleting entries)	4-11
Phone Book (editing)	4-10
Phone Book (quoting information)	3-13
Phone Book (saving).....	4-3
Phone Book (searching)	4-9
Phone Book Lock	9-23
Phone Help.....	11-26
Phonetic Conversion.....	3-10
Photo Camera mode	6-5
Pictogram list.....	19-16

Pictograms.....	3-7
Picture (Phone Book).....	4-6
Picture Appearance (Messaging)	13-38
Picture Editor.....	8-12
Picture Quality (mobile camera) ...	6-17
Picture Size (Photo Camera)	6-16
PIN	1-6, 9-21
PIN Entry	9-21
Playback Pattern (music).....	7-11
Playback Pattern (video).....	7-13
Playing Music	7-9
Playlist.....	7-18
Pointer.....	14-5
Portrait/Macro Selector.....	1-9
Power Off Sound	9-15
Power On Sound	9-15
Power on/off.....	1-20
Predictive (conversion).....	3-6
Previous Usage (conversion).....	3-6
Priority.....	13-16
Properties (S! Applications).....	15-4

Q

Quick Conversion.....	3-11
Quick Entry (schedule icons).....	11-3
Quick Operations	1-24
Quiz	13-17

R

Received Calls.....	2-8, 2-13
Received Msg. View	13-5, 13-25

Set Auto Delete	13-16	Sort (Media Player).....	7-10	Text Entry (Editing Characters).....	3-12
Set Auto Play File	13-17	Sort (Messaging)	13-4	Text Entry (Entering Characters)	3-5
Set Date/Time.....	9-16	Sound Settings	7-14	Text Orientation (E-Book).....	17-6
Set Holiday	11-2	Sounds & Alerts	9-12	Text Templates	3-14, 11-26
Set Low Priority	3-12	Speed Dial.....	4-13	Time Format.....	9-16
Set Preferred	10-15	Speed Mail.....	13-34	Time Search	7-13
Set Sent Cancel	13-27	Split Picture	8-17	Tone Control	7-11
Set Time Zone.....	9-16, 11-14	SSL	14-3	Totals	11-25
Set to Default	15-9	Stamp (Picture Editor)	8-13	Touch Tones	2-11
Set to Default (S! FeliCa)	16-8	Standby	1-20	Transfer Audio (Video Call)	5-6
Settings (E-Book)	17-6	Status Light.....	9-14		
Settings (S! Application).....	15-8	Stopwatch	11-24	U	
Sharp Space Town.....	14-9	Streaming.....	14-12	Unsent Messages.....	13-2
Shortcuts.....	1-23	Subtitle (Video Player)	7-16	Uploading Files	14-19
Show Indicators.....	9-5	Surround	9-15	User Dictionary.....	9-17
Show My Number	12-10	SVG files.....	8-6	USIM Card	1-4
Show Operator Name	9-5	Swap Calls	12-6	USIM PINs	1-6
Show Secret Data	9-24	Switch Images	5-5		
Shutter Sound.....	6-15	Switch to Read (Messaging).....	13-25	V	
Side Keys	ii	Switch To Unread (Messaging) ..	13-25	Via Infrared	10-12
Signature Settings.....	13-36	Symbols	3-7	Vibration (Alarm).....	11-13
Simple Menu	2-21	Sync Settings (Phone Book)	4-17	Vibration (handset)	9-13
Slide Show	8-5	Synchronisation (Memory Card) ..	15-3	Vibration (S! Application)	15-9
Slides	13-24	Synchronisation		Video Call.....	5-2
Small Light	1-15	(Phone Book).....	4-15, 4-18	Video Call Settings.....	5-6
SMS.....	13-2	System Graphics	9-3	Video Camera mode.....	6-8
SMS Settings	13-37	System Sounds	9-14	Video Output.....	9-10, 9-11
Snooze (Alarm)	11-13			Video Quality (mobile camera).....	6-17
Soft Keys	1-22	T		View Log (Phone Book)	4-19
Software Update	19-8	Tasks	11-7	Visibility	10-4
Sort (Data Folder)	8-4	Templates	13-15	Vivid Mode	9-5

Voice Memo	2-12
Voice Recorder	11-15
Voicemail	12-4
Volume (Answer Phone)	2-10
Volume (Earpiece Volume)...	2-11, 5-4, 9-15
Volume (handset functions)	9-12
Volume (Media Player)	7-10

W

Wallpaper	9-3
Warning Tone	9-15
Weather Indicator	17-4
WEB Link Connection	7-11
Web Link Settings	7-14
Withheld	12-9
World Clock.....	11-14

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	14-2
Yahoo! Keitai (accessing)	14-3

Warranty & After-Sales Services

■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- **Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.**
- **Read through contents and keep in a safe place.**
- **The warranty term is described in the warranty.**

■ After-Sales Services

See **P.19-4** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Centre, Customer Assistance (see **P.19-28**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- **Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.**
- **Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.**

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Centre, General Information (see **P.19-28**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

Note ►

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

If you have questions about SoftBank handsets or services, please call General Information. For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centres

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157** for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank International Call Centre

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(International charges will apply.)

■ Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Centre	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kouchi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-250-113

SoftBank 810SH/811SH Instruction Manual

November 2006, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank shop.

Model: SoftBank 810SH

811SH

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION



モバイル・リサイクルネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.